

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

初中同步练习册. 英语七年级. 下册: 配人教版 / 同步练习册编写组编. -- 济南: 山东科学技术出版社, 2020.12 (2023.1 重印)

ISBN 978-7-5723-0716-4

I. ①初… II. ①同… III. ①英语课 - 初中 - 习题集 IV. ①G634

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2020) 第 251588 号

初中同步练习册 英语 七年级下册
配人教版

CHUZHONG TONGBU LIANXI CE YINGYU QI NIANJI XIA CE
PEI RENJIAO BAN

责任编辑: 李康群 张泽瑞

主管单位: 山东出版传媒股份有限公司

出版者: 山东科学技术出版社

地址: 济南市市中区舜耕路 517 号

邮编: 250003 电话: (0531) 82098088

网址: www.lkj.com.cn

电子邮件: sdkj@sdcbcm.com

发行者: 山东新华书店集团有限公司

印刷者: 济南华东彩印有限公司

规格: 大 16 开 (210 mm × 297 mm)

印张: 9.5

版次: 2020 年 12 月第 1 版 印次: 2023 年 1 月第 3 次印刷

定价: 12.60 元

山东出版传媒股份有限公司教材中心售后服务电话: 0531-82098188



目 录

Contents



Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?	1
Section A	2
Section B	4
单元评估	7
Unit 2 What time do you go to school?	10
Section A	11
Section B	13
单元评估	16
Unit 3 How do you get to school?	19
Section A	20
Section B	23
单元评估	26
Unit 4 Don't eat in class.	29
Section A	30
Section B	32
单元评估	35
Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?	38
Section A	39
Section B	41
单元评估	44
Unit 6 I'm watching TV.	47
Section A	48
Section B	51
单元评估	54
期中测试	57
Unit 7 It's raining!	62
Section A	63

Section B	66
单元评估	69
Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?	72
Section A	73
Section B	76
单元评估	79
Unit 9 What does he look like?	82
Section A	83
Section B	86
单元评估	89
Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.	92
Section A	93
Section B	95
单元评估	98
Unit 11 How was your school trip?	102
Section A	103
Section B	105
单元评估	108
Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?	112
Section A	113
Section B	115
单元评估	119
期末测试	122
参考答案	127
听力材料	141

Unit 1

Can you play the guitar?

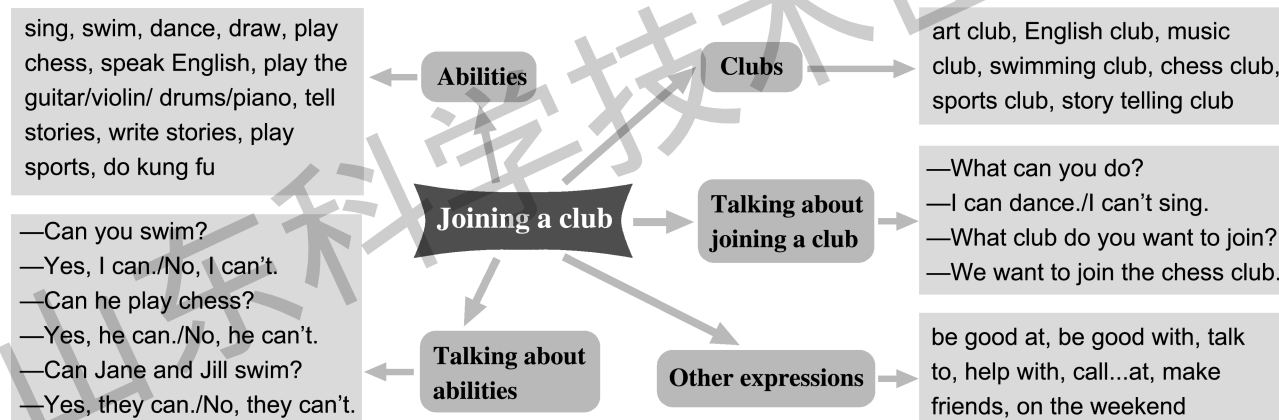
单元概要

本单元话题是“Joining a club”。通过本单元的学习,能运用话题知识谈论自己或他人的能力。通过图文展现俱乐部招聘以及学生应聘的情境,呈现与谈论能力、介绍及选择俱乐部等相关的句型和重点词汇,并由简单的俱乐部招聘广告扩展到某些大型活动的人才招聘海报,引导学生正确使用情态动词 can,并能综合运用本单元所学知识,介绍自己和他人的才能,为活动设计创意海报或广告。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容,能运用以下单词、短语和句式谈论自己或他人的能力,介绍及选择加入俱乐部;能正确运用情态动词 can 谈论才能,并掌握谈论加入俱乐部的相关核心句型;掌握“招聘海报”的内容架构,能在俱乐部或活动招聘中介绍个人才能,并能为俱乐部纳新或某些大型活动设计海报或广告;能自如表达自身优势和特点。



文化探索

在英格兰,人们经常谈论天气这个话题,你知道是为什么吗? 读下面的文章,你就会了解其中的缘由。

In England, people often talk about the weather because they can experience(经历) four seasons(季节) in one day. In the morning the weather is warm just like in spring. An hour later black clouds(乌云) come and then it rains hard. The weather gets a little cold. In the late afternoon the sky will be sunny, the sun will begin to shine(照耀), and it will be summer at this time of a day.

In England, people can also have summer in winter, or have winter in summer. So in winter they can swim sometimes, and in summer sometimes they should take warm clothes.

When you go to England, you will see that some English people usually take an umbrella or a raincoat with them in the sunny morning. But you should not laugh at(嘲笑) them.

If you don't take an umbrella or a raincoat, you will regret(后悔) later in the day.

Questions:

Why do people often talk about the weather in England? If your friend travels to England, what advice will you give him or her?



Section A



重点突破

1. Can you play the guitar? 你会弹吉他吗?

【感知】(1) I like *playing basketball* on the weekend.

(2) He can *play the piano* very well.

【思考】play 用作及物动词,表示“打球,下棋”时,后面直接加球类、棋类名词;表示“弹奏乐器”时,乐器前面需要加_____。

【运用】

(1) Do you often play _____ tennis after school?

A. a B. the C. / D. an

(2) I don't like sport. But I often play _____ guitar.

A. a B. / C. the D. an

(3) Jack often plays _____ chess and he wants to join the chess club.

A. an B. / C. the D. a

2. Can you swim? 你会游泳吗?

【感知】(1) I *can swim and play chess*.

(2) —*Can you swim?*

—Yes, I *can*. / No, I *can't*.

(3) He *can sing* but he *can't swim*.

【思考】can 是_____动词,后跟_____表示会、能够做某事。“Can you...?”是询问对方是否会干什么的句型,肯定回答用“Yes, I _____.”。否定回答用“No, I _____.”。

【运用】

(1) —Can you play soccer?

—_____ It's easy.

A. Yes, I can. B. No, I can't.

C. No, I can. D. Yes, I can't.

(2) I can sing the song, but he _____.

A. doesn't B. does

C. can D. can't

(3) —_____ you draw some pictures?

—Yes, I can. I can draw many kinds of pictures.

A. Can B. May

C. Must D. Should

3. He likes to speak English. 他喜欢说英语。

【感知】(1) I can *speak* a little French.

(2) She *says* “Goodbye” when she goes to school.

(3) Don't *talk* to him.

(4) You are very good at *telling* stories.

【思考】辨析 speak, say, talk, tell

speak 表示说,后面常跟一种_____;

say 表示说,后面可以跟说的内容;

talk 表示说话、谈话。talk _____ sb. 意为“向某人说”, talk _____ sb. 意为“和某人交谈”,

talk _____ sth. 意为“谈论某事”;

tell 表示告诉、讲述、命令, tell sb. sth. = tell sth. _____ sb. 意为“告诉某人某事”, tell sb. _____ do sth. 意为“告诉某人做某事”。

【运用】

用方框内动词的适当形式填空。

□ speak, tell, talk, say

(1) He has to learn to _____ English because his father will take him to England.

(2) I can't hear you, please _____ it to me again.

(3) Kevin is _____ with his mother about his problems.

(4) The teacher _____ us to listen carefully in class.

4. What club do you want to join? 你想加入什么俱乐部?

【感知】(1) I *want* a new dress on my birthday.

(2) Lisa *wants* to join the music club.

(3) My mother *wants* me to drink milk.

【思考】want 是“想要”的意思,可以直接加名词或代词,表示想要某物;也可以跟 to do, 表示想要做某事;用 want sb. _____ sth. 表示想要某人做某事。

【运用】

(1) 我想要一架钢琴。

I _____ a _____.

(2) 我的朋友想加入讲故事俱乐部。

My friend _____ the story telling club.

(3) 老师想让我们在做作业时认真思考。

The teacher _____ think carefully when we do homework.



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及句意完成单词

1. Many British people can s _____ Chinese very well.

2. The little girl can /drɔ:/ _____ pictures well.



She wants to join the art club.

3. Mike can play the /pɪˈænəʊ/ _____ very well.
Li Ming can do that, too.
4. What c _____ do you want to join?
5. I often play c _____ with my grandfather on weekends.

二、单项选择

1. They are English, but they can _____ Chinese well.
A. say B. tell C. speak D. talk
2. The young pianist plays the piano very _____.
A. good B. great C. bad D. well
3. I want to join the _____ club. I can _____ well.
A. swim; swim B. swimming; swims
C. swim; swims D. swimming; swim
4. My brother wants _____ to you. Are you free?
A. to tell B. tells C. to talk D. talks
5. I can tell stories, _____ I can't write stories.
A. but B. or C. and D. too
6. —Do you often play _____ tennis after school?
—No, I don't like sport. I often play _____ guitar.
A. a; the B. the; / C. /; the D. the; a
7. She _____ sing, but she can dance.
A. doesn't B. isn't C. can't D. don't
8. We want three good musicians _____ the school music festival.
A. to B. with C. at D. for
9. Please _____ me _____ 889-66558.
A. call; at B. tell; at
C. call; in D. tell; in

三、用括号内单词的适当形式填空

1. Jill can _____ (sing) very well.
2. She hopes to be good at _____ (dance) in the future.
3. My friend likes _____ (play) games with me.
4. Li Lei likes to tell _____ (story).
5. You can call _____ (I) at 471-4856.
6. —Let's _____ (dance) tonight.
—That's great.
7. Alice sings and dances very _____ (good).
8. My brother wants to join the _____ (swim) club.
9. Tom likes basketball. He wants _____ (join) the basketball club.

10. Two _____ (piano) are in the music room.

四、根据图片补全问答或连词成句

1. — _____
—Yes, I can. But I can't play well.



2. —What club do you want to join?



3. — _____
—I can do kung fu.



4. good at, Jane, is, telling stories (.)

5. Tom and Jill, dance, very well, can (.)

五、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

A: Here are all the clubs.

B: 1 _____

A: I want to join the English club. 2 _____

B: Hmm. I want to join the chess club. Can you play chess?

A: No, I don't like chess. 3 _____

B: Oh, yes. I like singing and dancing.

A: Me, too. 4 _____

B: I can also learn to play the guitar in the music club.

A: That's great! 5 _____

B: Thanks a lot.

- A. I think I can help you with it.
B. How about you?
C. What club do you want to join?
D. Do you like music?
E. Let's join the music club.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____



能力提升

六、完形填空

Hello, I'm Leo. We have some 1 in our school—the music club, the chess club, the sports club and so on. Many boys want to 2 the sports club. What sports can 3 play? They can play basketball, volleyball and tennis, and they 4 basketball best(最). They think it's interesting and 5. We all know Jeremy Lin is 6 great basketball player(运动员). Boys 7 to be a basketball player like him. Some girls also like playing basketball.



Can you play basketball? If not, I can tell you
8 to play it. I'm 9 the basketball club. I
can play it well. It's not 10 to be a good play-
er. But if you work hard and often play it, you can
do well.

1. A. classes B. clubs C. centers D. subjects
2. A. see B. help C. join D. sell
3. A. they B. we C. you D. he
4. A. thank B. need C. watch D. love
5. A. boring B. relaxing C. busy D. difficult
6. A. the B. an C. a D. /
7. A. sound B. want C. get D. come
8. A. where B. what C. how D. when
9. A. on B. with C. in D. for
10. A. small B. difficult C. big D. easy

七、阅读理解

Swimmers Wanted

Can you swim? Do you like kids? Can you help
them with swimming on weekends? Come and join
us. Call Janice at 880-9132 for more information
(信息).

Chess Club

Do you like to play chess? Do you want to play
chess well? Miss Zhang teaches you. You can come
here every Friday afternoon.

Tel: 855-2828

Room 510 in school's P. E. building

Let's Learn English

Can you speak English? Do you want to learn
more English? Join the English Club now.

Musicians Wanted

Boys and girls, are you music lovers? Can you
sing or dance? Can you play any instruments(乐
器)? Welcome to our Star Rock Band. Please call
Sally at 302-6730 or send an e-mail to *music@*
xxx.com.

1. What can Miss Zhang teach you?

2. Mary can swim well and she wants to find a job.
Whom can she call for more information?

3. Tommy wants to join the chess club. When can
he go to the club?

4. You love music and you want to join Star Rock
Band. What can you do?

Section B



重点突破

1. I like to play basketball. 我喜欢打篮球。

【感知】(1) I like cats very much.

(2) I like playing tennis on the weekend.

(3) I like to go fishing this Sunday.

【思考】like 的意思为“喜欢”，可以用作及物动
词，后面常加名词或代词。表示喜欢做某事时，
常加_____，构成“like doing sth.”结构，强调
一种习惯或爱好。表示喜欢去做某事时，常加
_____，构成“like to do sth.”结构，强调计划
性和临时性。

【运用】

(1) I like _____ (swim) in the river in summer.

(2) People like _____ (play) the drums to
show their happiness.

2. I can speak English and I can also play soccer. 我 能说英语，并且我也能踢足球。

【感知】(1) I can also play the violin.

(2) I also like playing the piano.

(3) I can sing and dance, too.

【思考】also 和 too，都表示“也”的意思。其中 also
常用在句中，而 too 常用在_____，通常用逗
号与句子隔开。also 常用在连系动词、助动词、
情态动词后，_____前；too 常用于_____，
否定句中常改为 either。

【运用】

(1) He is _____ a good singer.

A. also B. too C. and D. but

(2) Lucy and Lily are twins. Lucy has long hair
and Lily has long hair, _____.

A. also B. too C. and D. but

(3) I want a cup of coffee. He wants a cup of
coffee, too. (改为否定句)

I don't want a cup of coffee. He _____
_____ a cup of coffee, _____.

3. We need help at the old people's home. 在老人院 我们需要帮助。

【感知】(1) I need a dictionary this term.

(2) You need to talk to your parents when you
are in trouble.

【思考】need 表示需要，可以跟某物构成“need
sth.”结构，表示需要某物；也可以跟_____，
构成“need to do sth.”结构，表示需要做某事；



need sb. _____ sth. 表示需要某人做某事。
need 还可以用作情态动词。

【运用】

- (1) 他们需要一个足球老师教足球。
They _____ a soccer teacher _____ soccer.
- (2) 他不需要把书带到学校来。
He _____ bring the book to school.
- (3) 父母需要我们明天一早来这儿。
Parents need _____ here early tomorrow morning.

4. Are you good with old people? 你能同老人相处得好吗?

- 【感知】**(1) She *is good with* children and she wants to be a teacher.
(2) It *is good for* us to play sports.
(3) My mother *is good at* cooking and she always makes delicious food for my family.

【思考】be good _____ 意为“能应付某人或与某人相处得好”; be good _____ 意为“对……有益处、有好处”; be good _____ 意为“擅长做某事或在某方面有特长”。

【运用】

用 with, at 或 for 填空。

- (1) Mary is good _____ telling stories.
- (2) Eating more vegetables is good _____ our health.
- (3) Mr. Wang is good _____ students. They all like him very much.

5. Then we need you to help with sports for English-speaking students. 然后, 我们需要你在运动方面帮助说英语的学生。

- 【感知】**(1) We need *help* for the after-school activities.
(2) Mike often *helps* me to learn English.
(3) She *helps* her mom *with* housework after she finishes her homework.

【思考】help 既是_____也是_____。作名词时, 意为“帮助”。作动词时, 可以说 help sb. (to) do sth. 意为“帮助某人做某事”; 在某方面帮助某人可表达为“help sb. _____ sth.”。

【运用】

- (1) The school needs you to help students _____ their Chinese. (介词)
- (2) Lily often helps her mother _____ (make) cakes on Sundays.
- (3) She can help us _____ (sing) songs.



基础强化

一、根据汉语提示、音标及句意填写单词

1. What do you usually do on the /'wi:kend/ _____?
2. Jack's brother often _____ (帮助) him with his math.
3. I _____ (需要) you to take this book to the classroom.
4. The old man is a /mju:'zi:fn/ _____ and he is playing the violin under the big tree.
5. Miss Wang _____ (教) us history this term.

二、单项选择

1. Tom helps his parents _____ the housework.
A. with B. in C. at D. on
2. Lisa wants to _____ us her new pictures.
A. show B. take C. draw D. teach
3. We all know that Jackie Chan is good at _____ Chinese kung fu.
A. do B. does C. doing D. to do
4. Although(尽管) she is not good _____ readers, she is really good _____ writing.
A. at; with B. with; at C. with; with D. at; at
5. —Let's play chess.
—No, that sounds _____. Let's play soccer.
A. interesting B. good C. boring D. great
6. —Emma, what do you always do _____?
—Hmm, on Saturday I play the piano and on Sunday I play sports.
A. on TV B. next week C. in the evening D. on the weekend
7. Do you want your son _____ the _____ club?
A. to join; swim B. to join; swimming C. join; swim D. join; swimming
8. Please call me _____ 888678 if you find my bag.
A. at B. by C. from D. for
9. —Can Peter _____ English stories?
—Yes, he can. He writes them every week.
A. write B. speak C. teach D. tell
10. We can sing _____ dance. But we can't play volleyball _____ soccer.



- A. and; or B. or; and
C. and; and D. or; or

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 我喜欢弹钢琴。

I like to _____.

2. 请拨打 555-3721 与米勒夫人联系。

Please _____ Mrs. Miller _____ 555-3721.

3. 你善于和老人相处吗?

_____ you good _____ old people?

4. 我喜欢和善良的人交朋友。

I like to _____ with kind people.

5. 他放学后经常帮助父母做家务。

He often _____ his parents _____ house-work after school.

四、从括号内选择合适的单词填空

- Can you help me _____ (at/with) my English?
- Please call Mr. Wang _____ (at/with) 8834567.
- Jim likes English and he _____ (also/too) likes Chinese.
- Are you good _____ (at/with) old people?
- I have lots of homework and I'm not _____ (busy/free) today.

五、连词成句

- are, good, at, telling, stories, very, you (.)

- at, Mrs. Miller, 555-3721, call, please (.)

- you, need, to, help, English-speaking, students, with, for, sports, we (.)

- teachers, we, for, need, our, music, club (.)

- Mr. Zhang, talk, to, please, after, class (.)

六、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,使短文完整、通顺

sing, play, is, speak, think, have, swim, want

Jane is 15 years old. She 1 to join School Trip to help the kids with sports, music and English. She 2 many skills(技能). She can 3 the guitar well. She can 4 many songs. She can 5 and she can 6 English well. She 7 she can 8 good with the kids.

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____



能力提升

七、完形填空

Dear Mike,

How are you? I have a good time at my new 1 in Beijing, China. I'm good with my 2 and classmates. They all like me and I also like 3. At school my favorite 4 are Chinese and music. And I 5 two clubs, the Chinese club and the music club. In the music club, I have a good friend. Her 6 is Yang Yin. She likes music. She sings 7. She can also play the piano and the violin. She says she wants 8 a musician. Yang Yin likes 9, too. On weekends she often plays tennis or ping-pong with me. Do you want to know her? Look! Here is a 10 of her. I think you'll like her.

Yours,
Maria

- A. store B. home C. school D. family
- A. lessons B. teachers C. parents D. students
- A. it B. her C. him D. them
- A. teachers B. friends C. subjects D. sports
- A. meet B. join C. see D. know
- A. name B. number C. parent D. card
- A. good B. well C. boring D. easy
- A. be B. is C. to be D. are
- A. art B. math C. science D. sports
- A. map B. photo C. book D. story

八、阅读理解

English Tutor(家教) Wanted

Do you like kids? Are you outgoing(外向的)? Do you have three years' experience(经验) as an English teacher? Do you have free time on Saturday and Sunday? We need a woman teacher for our daughter. She is twelve and she is not good at English. For the job, you will:

Teach from 3:00 p. m. to 6:00 p. m.

Play with our daughter.

Tell her stories in English.

You will work at our home. We live on Beihai Road, Garden District. The pay is \$ 30 each hour.

If you want to know more information, please call Mrs. Yang at 569-3258.

1. Mrs. Yang wants _____ for her daughter.
A. a babysitter B. a good graduate
C. an English tutor D. a math tutor
2. If you are the tutor, you must teach the girl for _____ on Saturday or Sunday.
A. a day B. two hours
C. three hours D. a whole afternoon
3. What is not a part of the job?
A. Cooking for the kid.
B. Working at the kid's house.
C. Being good with the kid.
D. Telling English stories to the kid.
4. If you want to be the tutor, you need to

- _____.
- ① be beautiful
② have three years' teaching experience
③ have time on the weekend
④ be a woman teacher
- A. ①② B. ②③ C. ②③④ D. ①②③
5. Which is NOT TRUE?
A. The tutor must teach the kid on the week-end.
B. The kid is good at English.
C. The tutor can speak English.
D. The tutor can get \$360, if she teaches the kid for two weekends.

单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What can Tom do?



2. Where does Peter want to go today?



3. What can Mary do very well?



4. What club does Mike want to join?

- A. Music Club
B. English Club
C. Football Club

5. What is Sam good at?



(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. When is the school show?
A. On May Day. B. On June 1st.

- C. On September 10th.
7. What is Frank good at?
A. Singing. B. Dancing.
C. Writing stories.
- 听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。
8. Where does John live?
A. In Beijing. B. In London.
C. In New York.
9. What does John like to do?
A. Draw and write. B. Write and read.
C. Draw and read.
10. What club is John in?
A. A Chinese club. B. A swimming club.
C. A chess club.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Information about Julia	
Nationality (国籍)	Julia is from the 11. _____.
Age	She is 12. _____.
Hobbies	She is good at playing the 13. _____. She likes singing and dancing, too.
	She has music lessons on 14. _____ evenings.
Future job	She wants to be a 15. _____ in the future.

二、单项选择

1. Bob can play _____ tennis very well.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
2. —Can you help me _____ my English?



—Of course.

A. with B. of C. on D. about

3. Jim can play the drums. _____ he can't play it very well.

A. And B. But C. Because D. So

4. Miss Read is _____ at music. She is in the music club.

A. happy B. well C. good D. bad

5. —Can you speak French?

—Yes, but only _____.

A. a little B. little C. a lot D. a few

6. —Do you like playing the violin or drums?

—_____ Drums are too noisy(吵闹的).

A. The drums. B. The violin.
C. Yes, I do. D. No, I don't.

7. How well you play the piano! Maybe you can _____ our music club.

A. do B. be C. join D. come

8. He can swim, so he wants to join the _____ club.

A. art B. music
C. chess D. swimming

9. —School show wants a lot of students.

—Great! _____ join now.

A. Don't B. Do C. Let's D. Let

10. —_____ do you join the sports club?

—Because I like playing sports very much.

A. What B. Where C. How D. Why

三、完形填空

There are many 1 in our school. My English is not 2. I want to join the English club. Wang Ying wants to 3 to paint. 4 he wants to join the art club.

Zhang Ping likes 5. He wants to join the running club. Li Nan is good 6 singing and she wants to join the 7 club. 8 club does Han Mei join? Oh, she 9 eating and she joins the cooking(烹饪) club. What can you 10? What club do you want to join?

1. A. trees B. clubs C. desks D. students
2. A. good B. well C. easy D. boring
3. A. join B. learn C. like D. need
4. A. So B. But C. And D. Or
5. A. running B. singing
C. swimming D. dancing
6. A. of B. with C. at D. for
7. A. math B. art C. music D. sports
8. A. When B. Why C. How D. What

9. A. is B. has C. wants D. likes

10. A. be B. do C. have D. see

四、补全对话

A: Hi, Jia Han. 1

B: Yes, I can dance and I join the music club.

2

A: I want to join the art club.

B: Oh. 3

A: No. But I can dance, and I want to learn about it.

B: Well. I like art, too. 4

A: Sorry, I can't. I have to do my homework.

B: What about next Monday afternoon?

A: 5

1. A. Can you dance?
B. Do you like art lessons?
C. What do you do?
D. Where is music room?
2. A. What can you do?
B. Are you in music club?
C. What club do you want to join?
D. Do you want to join the art club?
3. A. Do you like art?
B. Can you draw well?
C. Why do you like art?
D. What can you do?
4. A. Are you free tomorrow?
B. What about the art club?
C. Do you like to join the art club?
D. Let's go to the art club tomorrow.
5. A. OK. I'll be free then.
B. You are welcome.
C. That sounds boring.
D. Thank you very much.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

Tom and Mike are good friends. They are kind to children. They want to find summer jobs.

One day Tom tells Mike that Kids Summer Camp needs help with sports, music and computers. They are both very glad to hear(听说) this. Tom can play basketball and volleyball, and he can swim, too. Mike can play the violin, the trumpet, the drums and the guitar. Tom and Mike like computers very much.

Can they join Kids Summer Camp?

1. Tom and Mike want to _____.
A. be good with children



- B. help with sports
C. join Kids Summer Camp
D. get the Camp's help
2. What does the summer camp need help with?
A. Flying kites.
B. Sports, music and computers.
C. Making cakes.
D. Singing and drawing pictures.
3. Tom can _____.
A. play volleyball
B. play computer games
C. play the violin
D. tell stories to children
4. Mike can play _____.
A. the drums B. volleyball
C. basketball D. football
5. What do Tom and Mike both like?
A. Football. B. Computers.
C. Swimming. D. Sports.

六、按要求完成句子

1. You are good at _____/'telɪŋ/ stories.
2. Jet Li can do _____ (China) kung fu.
3. Do you want _____ (join) the art club?
4. Mr Green can _____ (speak) Chinese very well.
5. Helen likes _____ (交朋友) with different people in China.

七、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. _____
—Yes, I can.
2. can, sing, dance, Lucy's brother, and (.)

3. often, her friend, math, Gina, helps, with (.)

4. _____ (good with)
—Yes, I am. I love children.
5. play chess, or, can, he, play the drums (?)



八、任务型阅读

根据短文内容填空或回答问题。

Shlander is a man from space (太空). He thinks the people and things on the earth are very strange. He is now writing a letter to his friend at home. Here is part of his letter.

"Now I am in a strange world. It is very nice. There are many new things here.

"There are many earth monsters (怪物) here, too. The earth monsters look very funny.

"They have just one head, two arms and two legs. They have thin black strings on their heads. Some earth monsters have brown or yellow strings. The earth monsters have a hole in their face. Every day, they put nice things and balls from the trees into the hole.

"They put water into the hole, too. The earth monsters do not walk very fast. They move from place to place in tin boxes (铁盒).

"At night, the earth monsters like to look at a square (方形的) window box. This box has very small earth monsters in it."

1. Shlander thinks the people and things on the earth are very _____.
2. What does Shlander call the people on the earth?

3. What do the earth monsters put into their holes?

4. The square window box is _____.

九、书面表达

假如你是在英国学习的 Lucy, 想参加学校郊游。请阅读下面的广告, 根据广告发一封电子邮件, 介绍一下你的兴趣爱好和能力。短文约 60 词。

1. Help Wanted for Beijing School Trip
2. Boys and girls (12~16 years old)
3. Are you good with kids?
4. Can you help with sports, music or English?
Come and join us.
Our e-mail address: swsc@×××.com

Unit 2

What time do you go to school?

单元概要

本单元话题是“Daily routines”，谈论学生日常作息习惯，并对日常活动的时间进行问答；通过对比 what time 和 when 引导的询问时间的特殊疑问句，帮助学生熟悉数字和时间的表达方式；创设不同情境，运用频度副词描述个人或朋友的日常作息习惯和日常活动，体现“关注健康生活，养成良好习惯”的生活理念。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式谈论作息习惯，并对日常活动的时间进行问答；能正确区分并会用 what time 和 when 询问他人的作息习惯；能运用常见的频度副词准确表述个人、家人及朋友的作息时间和日常活动。学会合理安排自己的学习和课外活动时间，加强时间观念，养成良好生活习惯；了解不同国家人们的日常生活习惯。

get up, get dressed, brush teeth, have breakfast/lunch/ dinner, go to school/work, go home, take a shower, do homework, take a walk, exercise, go to bed

Activities

Daily activities

Daily routines

Time

at seven o'clock, at half past six, at a quarter to eight, at night

in the morning/afternoon/evening

always, usually, often, sometimes, never

Frequencies

Talking about routines

—What time do you usually get up?
—I usually get up at six thirty.

—What time does Rick eat breakfast?
—He eats breakfast at seven o'clock.

—When does Scott go to work?
—He always goes to work at eleven o'clock.



文化探索

不同国家，孩子们的上学时间、学习时长和在校的学习内容都有哪些不同呢？阅读下面的文章，初步了解澳大利亚和法国的不同规定。

Students in Australia usually study in schools for 200 days a year. Their school year is from late January to mid-December. Their school year has four terms. The school day is from 9 a. m. to 3:30 p. m, and they have lunch at school. Each class usually has eighteen students.

School grades in Australia are called years. From year one to year six, students spend about 12 hours a week working on math and English.

The school day in France runs from 8 a. m. to 4 p. m. Students do not go to school on Wednesday or Sunday. On Saturday they are at school for half a day. Lunch is a two-hour break. Students usually go to school from ages 6 to 18. The number of students per(每一) class is 23. The school year is from August to June, and it has four seven-week terms.

Students from 6 to 11 learn basic skills(基本技能) in reading, writing, math and so on.

Questions:

What are the differences in school time between Australia and France? What about some other Western countries?



Section A



重点突破

1. What time do you go to school? 你什么时间去上学?

【感知】(1) What time does the store open?

(2) When will you take a trip this year?

【思考】对时间提问一般用 what time 和 when。when 是疑问_____, 意为“什么时候, 何时”, 常用于对_____ (某年/某月/某日) 提问; _____ 用来对某个时间或某个具体_____ 提问, 希望知道的时间比 when 更加具体。当泛指“做某事的时间”时, when 和 what time 可以互换。

【运用】

(1) — _____ (What time/When) is it now?

— It's half past seven.

(2) — _____ (What time/When) will the new zoo be open?

— Maybe in May of 2030.

(3) I usually go to school at 7:00 in the morning. (对画线部分提问)

_____ do you usually go to school in the morning?

2. I usually get up at six thirty. 我通常在六点半起床。

【感知】(1) My father usually goes to work at 6:00 in the morning.

(2) What do you usually do on Children's Day?

(3) We have final exams in winter and summer.

【思考】at 常用于时刻前或一些习惯用语中。如: 在五点钟 _____ five o'clock; 在中午或晚上 _____ noon/night; 在那时 _____ that time。in 用在月份、季节、年份等前面, 也可以表示在早上、在下午、在晚上。如: 在六月 _____ June; 在春季 _____ spring; 在早上 _____ the morning。

on 用在具体日期、星期几、节日前, 也用来表示在具体某一天的上午、下午或晚上。如: 在星期一 _____ Monday; 在7月10日的下午 _____ the afternoon of July 10th。

【运用】

用 at, on 或 in 填空。

(1) We usually have lunch _____ 12:00.

(2) We gave him a great present _____ his birthday.

(3) It always rains heavily _____ summer.

(4) I go to the library _____ Sunday morning.

(5) My family often watch TV _____ night.

3. That's a funny time for breakfast. 那是一个有趣的吃早饭的时间。

【感知】(1) It's funny to see the animals in the zoo.

(2) I hope you'll have fun at the party.

(3) — Let's go to the movies.

— That sounds fun.

【思考】funny 是形容词, 意思是“滑稽好笑的”。fun 可作 _____, 意为“有趣的, 使人快乐的”; 也可作 _____, 意为“乐趣, 快乐”。It's time for... 表示“做……的时间”, 也可以说 It's time _____ sth.。

【运用】

(1) 到了该吃午饭的时间了。

It's time _____.

It's time _____.

(2) What a/an _____ thing to wear a coat in summer!

A. funny B. exciting

C. interesting D. easy

4. So I'm never late for class. 所以我上课从不迟到。

【感知】(1) English is interesting so I like it.

(2) Are you often late for class?

【思考】so 意为“所以, 因此”, 表示 _____. be late _____ 表示“做某事迟到”。

【运用】

(1) On school days, I'm never late _____ school.

A. at B. for C. on D. to

(2) 他经常上学迟到。

He is often _____ school.



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及句意完成下列单词

1. He u _____ watches TV in the evening.

2. I get up early every morning so I'm n _____ late for school.

3. Mr. Green is very healthy because he /'eksəsaɪz/ _____ in the evening every day.

4. The story is so f _____. I like it very much.

5. It's my j _____ to teach the students English.

6. It's time for breakfast. You need to get /drest/ _____ quickly.



二、单项选择

- What time do you get up on weekends, Lily?
—I get up _____ 7:00.
A. by B. for C. in D. at
- Zhao Jun often runs _____ the morning. But _____ Sunday morning he doesn't.
A. in; in B. in; on C. on; on D. on; in
- _____ Mike _____ his homework in the evening?
A. Do; do B. Do; does
C. Does; do D. Does; /
- What time do you take a walk in the morning?
—_____
A. On weekends. B. With my friends.
C. At 6:30. D. For an hour.
- _____ does he go to work every day?
—At about eight o'clock.
A. What B. What time
C. Why D. What about
- What do you usually do _____ weekends?
—We usually play _____ soccer.
A. in; the B. on; the
C. on; / D. in; /
- I'm very busy from Monday _____ Friday.
On weekends, I can relax myself.
A. to B. with C. at D. on
- That is _____ funny time for _____ dinner.
A. a; / B. /; a C. /; / D. a; a
- I get up early every day, _____ I'm never late for school.
A. because B. so C. or D. but
- _____ he usually _____ a shower in the evening?
A. Do; take B. Does; takes
C. Does; take D. Is; taking

三、连词成句或根据图示补全问答

- What time do you usually go to school?
—_____
- _____
—She usually takes a shower in the morning.
- Where do your friends work?
—_____
- usually, Gina, eats breakfast, at nine (.)



- go to work, I, at six, be, I, so, never, late for work (.)

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

- 我通常从六点十五到七点锻炼身体。
I usually exercise _____ six fifteen _____ seven.
- 所以我上班从不迟到。
So I'm never _____ work.
- 你通常什么时候洗淋浴?
What time do you usually _____ a _____?
- 李磊通常早上六点钟起床穿衣服。
Li Lei usually gets up and _____ at 6:00 in the morning.
- 那个时间吃早饭真有意思!
That's a _____ time _____ breakfast!

五、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

get up, have a good job, get dressed, brush your teeth

- You need to _____ after eating to have good teeth.
- He _____. He works at a radio station.
- Judy, it's time to _____, or you will be late for school.
- Here are your clothes. Go and _____ quickly.



能力提升

六、完形填空

Today is Tuesday. We have a(n) 1 class in the morning. It starts at 8:30, but I am 2 for it. I often 3 school at about 7:40, 4 today I get there late. At about nine o'clock I get to the classroom. I'm really 5. My English teacher, Miss Green is very kind to me. She is waiting for(等候) me and 6 me in. How nice she is!

7 the afternoon, after classes, we usually have many clubs. We have 8 clubs. Students can learn how to draw, sing, dance and play the instruments well. Also we have sports clubs. Students can learn basketball, soccer and baseball here. I like dancing, 9 I am in the baseball club. Every afternoon, I go to the baseball club 10 because I don't want to be late. On weekends I play baseball with my parents.

- A. math B. art C. Chinese D. English
- A. happy B. late C. new D. sorry



3. A. take in B. look at C. get to D. work in
 4. A. or B. and C. after D. but
 5. A. sorry B. exciting C. nice D. happy
 6. A. speaks B. meets C. lets D. joins
 7. A. On B. In C. For D. About
 8. A. English B. sports
 C. art D. swimming
 9. A. but B. and C. or D. because
 10. A. late B. early C. never D. usually

七、阅读理解

Jenny is my friend. She has a happy family. In the morning, she gets up at five forty. She takes a shower and then eats breakfast at half past six. Her parents usually get up at five o'clock. They run for thirty minutes and go home to take showers. Then her mother makes breakfast at six o'clock, and her father watches news on TV.

After breakfast, Jenny's parents go to work and Jenny goes to school. They don't have lunch at home. In the afternoon, Jenny goes home at half past four. She always does her homework after she gets home. Her parents come back at five thirty. They have dinner at six thirty.

In the evening, she either reads books or watches TV, but she can only watch TV for twenty-five minutes. Her parents say it's bad for her eyes to watch TV too much. She has to go to bed at about nine o'clock.

- How many people are there in Jenny's family?
A. Two. B. Three. C. Four. D. Five.
- What time do Jenny's parents take showers?
A. At 5:20 a. m. B. At 5:30 a. m.
C. At 5:40 a. m. D. At 6:00 a. m.
- What does Jenny do after 4:30 p. m. ?
A. She makes dinner.
B. She reads books.
C. She does her homework.
D. She watches TV.
- How long can Jenny watch TV?
A. For 1 hour. B. For 2 hours.
C. For 35 minutes. D. For 25 minutes.
- Which is TRUE about the family?
A. Jenny's family don't have lunch at home.
B. Jenny exercises for 20 minutes in the morning.
C. Jenny's mother reads newspapers after showing.
D. Jenny's father doesn't go to work in the day-time.

Section B



重点突破

1. They usually eat dinner at a quarter to seven in the evening. 他们通常在晚上 6:45 吃晚饭。

【感知】(1) I usually go to school at seven twenty.

(2) He usually gets up at half past five.

(3) She often does her homework at a quarter past three in the afternoon.

(4) Kevin usually goes to bed at a quarter to ten in the evening.

【思考】在英语中,时间的表达可以通过直接读出的数字的方式,比如“7:10”,可以说“seven ten”。有一些特殊的情况,可以使用以下表达:

表示整点时,可以跟 o'clock。如:早上 5:00 可以说“_____ in the morning”。

表示半点以前的时刻,可以使用介词 past。如:6:10 可以说“ten _____ six”。

表示超过半点,可以使用介词 to。如:7:55 可以说“five _____ eight”。

注意:其中半点和一刻钟也可以分别用 _____ 和 _____ 表示。

【运用】

(1) 他通常在五点半起床。

He usually gets up at _____ .

(2) 我通常在 9:45 上床睡觉。

I usually go to bed at _____ .

(3) 我通常从 6:15 到 7:00 进行锻炼。

I usually exercise from _____ to _____ .

2. They always get dressed at seven twenty. 他们通常在 7:20 穿衣服。

【感知】(1) I never eat junk food.

(2) He sometimes goes to school by bus.

(3) Lucy always does her homework first after school.

(4) Tom often exercises on weekends.

(5) What time do you usually eat breakfast?

【思考】频度副词是表示次数、频率的副词。常用的频度副词有 _____ (通常)、_____ (有时候)、_____ (总是)、_____ (经常)、_____ (从不)等,一般用在 be 动词、情态动词、助动词之后,以及实义动词之前。通常用 how often 对频度副词进行提问。



【运用】

- (1) John is a good boy because he is _____ late for school.
A. always B. never
C. usually D. often
- (2) Grace is very healthy because she _____ exercises and eats a lot of vegetables.
A. never B. sometimes
C. hardly D. often
- (3) I usually run with my brother. (对画线部分提问)
_____ do you run with your brother?

3. In the evening, I *either* watch TV *or* play computer games. 在晚上,我要么看电视,要么玩电脑游戏。

【感知】(1) On weekends, they *either* visit their grandparents *or* go to the park.

(2) *Either* she *or* I am wrong.

(3) —Would you like some coffee or juice?
—*Either* is OK. I don't mind.

(4) I don't like the black coat, *either*.

【思考】*either...or...* 意为“要么……要么……”。如果连接两个并列主语,谓语与临近的主语保持一致。*either* 表示“或者;也”,用在_____ (肯定/否定)词组后;也可以作代词,在句中作主语,谓语动词用_____。

【运用】

- (1) My mother cleans the room _____ in the morning _____ in the evening. (要么……要么……)
- (2) My friend doesn't like playing basketball, _____ (也不).
- (3) *Either* your father *or* your mother _____ (come) to school to meet the teacher.

4. She knows it's not good for her, but it *tastes* good. 她知道对她没有好处,但是尝起来很好。

【感知】(1) This kind of fruit *tastes* sweet.

(2) The cake is delicious. Please *taste* it.

【思考】*taste* 意为“品尝,有……的味道”,可以作_____ 动词,后接名词或代词;也可以作系动词(感官动词),后接_____ 词作表语。类似用法的词还有 *smell*, *feel*, *look*, *sound* 等。

【运用】

- (1) I like salad because it *tastes* _____.
A. good B. well
C. bad D. badly
- (2) —Let's watch the basketball match.
—That _____ great.
A. looks B. feels
C. tastes D. sounds



基础强化

一、根据汉语意思填写单词

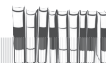
1. Ice-cream usually _____ (品尝) good, so students like to eat it after school.
2. It's a _____ (一刻钟) to 10 p. m. It's time to go to bed.
3. _____ (一半) of the students want to join the English club.
4. John often _____ (步行) to school.
5. I have time to _____ (打扫) my room on weekends.

二、单项选择

1. Hamburgers taste _____ but they are not _____ for you.
A. good; good B. good; well
C. well; well D. well; good
2. —What's Miss White's _____?
—She is a Chinese teacher.
A. hobby B. address
C. job D. phone number
3. Tina is always busy in the morning. She gets up at 7 o'clock and then she _____ her teeth quickly.
A. does B. brush C. have D. brushes
4. I _____ at ten o'clock in the evening.
A. have breakfast B. get up
C. go to bed D. watch morning TV
5. —What time does your father go to work?
—_____
A. At half past eight. B. In October.
C. On Monday. D. In the morning.
6. I don't have much time for breakfast, so I usually eat very _____.
A. late B. well C. early D. quickly
7. —Do you _____ in the morning?
—Yes. I usually run with my brother.
A. eat B. exercise C. draw D. write
8. I'm busy. I have much _____ to do these days.
A. job B. jobs C. work D. works
9. He runs _____ ten minutes and catches the bus.
A. for B. at C. in D. with
10. He *either* watches TV _____ reads stories in the evening.
A. or B. and C. but D. so

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. I have no time _____ (play) with you. I have to do homework.



2. I have a _____ (quick) breakfast and leave _____ (quick).
3. She usually _____ (take) a shower at 8:40.
4. —Who often _____ (play) computer games on school days?
—Either Bob or Tom does.
5. The food tastes _____ (well).

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 我要么看电视,要么玩电脑游戏。
I _____ watch TV _____ play computer games.
2. 她午饭吃大量的水果和蔬菜。
She eats _____ fruit and vegetables for lunch.
3. 我从学校回家并且做作业。
I get home from school and _____ my _____.
4. 爷爷每天饭后都要散步。
My grandfather always _____ a _____ after dinner.
5. 我们准备在 11:45 去吃午饭。
We plan to have lunch at _____ to twelve.

五、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

- A: Jim. Can you tell me something about your day?
B: Certainly.
A: 1
B: I often go to school at seven. 2
A: I often get to school at seven thirty. My home is near the school. 3
B: No, I don't. I eat lunch at school. After lunch I play soccer with my friends.
A: Great! 4 But I play it at 4:30 in the afternoon.
B: 5
A: Good idea.

- A. Let's play soccer on weekends.
B. What about you?
C. I like playing soccer, too.
D. What time do you go to school?
E. Do you have lunch at home?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____



能力提升

六、完形填空

My brother Frank is a clerk(职员) at a clothes store. He works very 1 hours every day. He usually 2 at six in the morning. After he brushes his 3, he starts to 4 for thirty

minutes. He thinks running is 5 for his health. Then he has breakfast. After breakfast, 6 takes a bus to work. He is very busy. He has no time to go home for 7, so he eats 8 at the store. In the 9, he works for four hours. He has dinner at home. On weekends, he is not busy. He usually goes to the movies 10 me.

1. A. long B. big C. short D. small
2. A. goes home B. gets up
C. goes shopping D. eats breakfast
3. A. shirts B. shoes C. teeth D. pants
4. A. dance B. swim C. sing D. run
5. A. happy B. good C. fun D. difficult
6. A. he B. she C. it D. his
7. A. fruit B. dinner C. breakfast D. lunch
8. A. them B. him C. it D. us
9. A. afternoon B. morning
C. evening D. night
10. A. at B. with C. for D. and

七、阅读理解

Dear Mom,

I'm happy to get your e-mail. I'm very well at school.

Do you want to know my after-class time? The classes finish at four o'clock. After class, I usually go to the library and read books. It's relaxing. Sometimes I play soccer with my classmates on the playground. I'm not good at it, but I like it. We have dinner at six. In the evening, we study in the classroom from seven o'clock to eight thirty. We usually do our homework. Science is difficult for me, but my friend Peter helps me with it. He is very nice. I take a shower at about nine o'clock and then go to bed at nine thirty. I often talk with my roommates before going to bed.

Remember to pick me up(接我) at 5 o'clock on Friday afternoon.

Yours,
Jenny

1. Jenny usually goes _____ after class.
A. home B. to the club
C. to the library D. to the store
2. Jenny studies for _____ hour(s) in the classroom in the evening.
A. 1 B. 1.5 C. 2 D. 2.5
3. Peter helps Jenny with her _____.
A. English B. math C. Chinese D. science
4. From the passage, we know that Jenny _____.
A. is good at playing soccer
B. often reads books before going to bed



C. goes to bed at ten o'clock

D. goes home on Friday afternoon

5. Jenny tells her mom about her _____ in the e-mail.

A. after-class activities B. favorite subjects

C. healthy life D. eating habits

八、用所给单词的适当形式填空

tell, know, be, play, run

Dear Jessica,

Thank you for your letter. Do you want 1 about my day?

I usually get up at about 6:30. Then I take a shower. I eat breakfast at around 7:15. At 8:00, I

take the bus to school. I 2 at school all day. I have violin lessons on Tuesday and Thursday afternoons at 3:00 and I can 3 the violin very well. I get home at 4:00. Rest for an hour and then I exercise. I like 4 ! I eat dinner at about 6:00. After dinner, I watch TV for an hour. My favorite TV show is at 6:45. I like it because it's interesting and exciting. At 7:30, I do my homework. I go to bed at 10:00.

Please write and 5 me about your day.

Mary

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What do you like best for lunch?



2. What do you usually do after school?



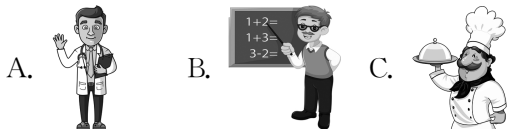
3. What do you like for breakfast?



4. When does your father go to work?



5. What does Tony want to be?



(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6 至 8 题。

6. Where do they want to go?

A. Dongfang Cinema.

B. Dongmen Market.

C. Zebra Supermarket.

7. What can they do there?

A. See a show.

B. Buy some books.

C. Watch a movie.

8. What time do they meet?

A. 8:50. B. 9:00. C. 9:50.

听第二段对话,回答第 9、10 题。

9. Who makes dinner for Maria every day?

A. Her father.

B. Her sister.

C. Her mother.

10. What does Maria usually do after dinner?

A. Play the piano.

B. Listen to music.

C. Watch TV.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Paul's Day	
6:00 a. m.	Get up early in the morning.
6:30 a. m.	Have 11. _____ and milk for breakfast.
6:50 a. m.	Go to school by 12. _____.
8:00 a. m. ~ 3:00 p. m.	Have 13. _____ classes.
3:30 p. m.	Play 14. _____ in the afternoon.
4:30 p. m.	Go home.
6:30 p. m.	Eat dinner with his 15. _____.
9:30 p. m.	Go to bed.



二、单项选择

- I often have _____ egg and a glass of milk for breakfast every day.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
- Tom usually goes to school _____ 7:30 in the morning.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
- The pizza _____ good. I'd like some more.
A. turns B. sounds C. tastes D. feels
- I want to _____ No. 5 bus to Tian'an men Square. Where's the bus stop?
A. get B. come C. go D. take
- Lily cleans her room every day, so her room is very _____.
A. easy B. cool C. useful D. tidy
- Hi, Lucy. _____ is your birthday party?
—On May 2nd.
A. What B. When C. Why D. Where
- In the morning I usually _____ early to exercise. It's good for me.
A. get up B. watch TV
C. wash hands D. eat fruit
- What a good time to see the show!
—Yes, the show is very _____.
A. boring B. difficult C. funny D. busy
- Mr. Black works very long hours. He is tired, _____ he is happy.
A. but B. so C. and D. or
- Which would you like, tea or coffee?
—_____ is OK. I don't mind.
A. Either B. Both C. All D. Each

三、完形填空

Peter Smith is a news reporter at a TV station. He reads the latest news at British Television _____ 1 _____ 11 o'clock at night. He always _____ 2 _____ up early and eats breakfast with his three _____ 3 _____ before they take the school bus. Then he _____ 4 _____ bed for a short time. After that, he either swims _____ 5 _____ runs for half an hour. He joins the London Marathon(马拉松) two times and he likes doing exercise. He starts to work after _____ 6 _____ at 2 o'clock. When he goes to his office at the TV station, he works hard, but he always goes home early and tells bedtime _____ 7 _____ to his kids. His youngest child, Rick, wants to _____ 8 _____ a news-reader, like his father. Peter Smith's day is busy but he thinks it is _____ 9 _____ because he likes his work. Every evening we can see him on TV and he _____ 10 _____ nice in his black suit(西装).

- A. at B. in C. on D. about
- A. sits B. gets C. stands D. goes
- A. brothers B. friends C. sisters D. children
- A. looks at B. listens to
C. goes to D. gets to
- A. and B. or C. also D. but
- A. breakfast B. lunch
C. dinner D. school
- A. jobs B. books C. stories D. news
- A. be B. see C. go D. have
- A. free B. easy
C. hard D. interesting
- A. tastes B. looks C. feels D. sounds

四、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

- A: Hi, George. Can I ask you some questions?
B: Sure.
A: _____ 1 _____
B: At 6:30.
A: What do you usually do after getting up?
B: _____ 2 _____
A: _____ 3 _____
B: For about 40 minutes.
A: _____ 4 _____
B: Yes, I usually go to bed at 9 o'clock.
A: Wow, your living habits are really healthy. By the way, can you speak Chinese?
B: Just a little. My Chinese isn't good.
A: Oh, my Chinese isn't good, either. _____ 5 _____
B: Good idea.

- A. Do morning exercises.
B. How long do you usually do morning exercises?
C. What time do you get up every morning?
D. Why don't you play with them?
E. Let's join the Chinese club.
F. I usually exercise on Sunday.
G. Do you go to bed early?

- _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
- _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

Jenny gets up early in the morning. She has her breakfast and then goes to school. She walks to the bus stop and takes a bus. She gets to school at about half past seven. Jenny is never late for school. She likes her school and works hard. Classes begin at 8:00. She has six classes every day. Jenny is good at all her lessons, and she likes English best.



Usually Jenny has lunch at school. She goes home at five in the afternoon. Sometimes, she helps her friends with their lessons. After supper she usually watches TV news. Then she does her homework. She goes to bed at about 9:50. Jenny is a good girl.

- Where does Jenny have her breakfast?
A. At home. B. At school.
C. On her way to school. D. On the bus.
- What do we know about Jenny?
A. She doesn't like going to school.
B. She can't do her lessons.
C. She does very well in her lessons.
D. She doesn't know her lessons at all.
- How many hours is Jenny at school?
A. Seven hours.
B. Seven and a half hours.
C. Eight hours.
D. Nine and a half hours.
- What does Jenny sometimes do after school?
A. She has supper at school.
B. She helps her friends with her lessons.
C. She does some shopping for her mother.
D. She goes home with her friends.
- What does Jenny do after supper?
A. She watches TV and then goes to bed.
B. She watches TV and does some housework.
C. She watches TV and does her homework.
D. She reads English and does some sports.

六、根据首字母、音标及句意完成单词

- Jim doesn't have lunch at school. I don't have lunch here, e _____.
- What time is it?
—Oh, it's a q _____ past time.
- Mary is 5 years old, and she _____ (dress) herself in the morning.
- My English teacher _____ /'ju:ʒuəli/ walks to work. She likes walking very much.
- What do you think of the food?
—Oh, it _____ /teists/ good.

七、按要求完成句子

- It is a good habit(习惯) to brush _____ (tooth) after dinner.
- He usually tells us _____ (fun) stories.
- He _____ (brush) his sports shoes every Sunday.
- don't, much time, I, for breakfast, have(连词成句)
_____.

- why, get up, so, early, your mother, do(连词成句)
_____.

- get dressed, and, quickly, go, please(连词成句)
_____.

八、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

Linda usually gets up early in the morning. She (1) has breakfast at six thirty. And she goes to school at around seven o'clock. Usually she gets to school at seven fifty. Ten minutes later school starts. She has four classes in the morning. At twelve fifteen, she eats (2) _____ at school. In the afternoon she isn't very busy. (3) After school she does her homework and plays with other children.

In the evening her parents come back from work. Her mother cooks dinner and then they have dinner together. After dinner Linda and her mother often read books or listen to music. Sometimes they watch TV. Linda goes to bed (4) at nine thirty. But her father works late at night.

- 写出(1)处短语的近义词。 _____
- 在(2)处填一个合适的单词。 _____
- 将(3)处的画线句子译为汉语。 _____

- 对(4)处的画线部分进行提问。 _____

- What time does school start in Linda's school? _____

九、书面表达

假如你是王浩, 你的美国笔友史蒂夫(Steve)发邮件想了解你一天的学习生活是怎样的。请你根据日常活动的情况, 给他写一封回信。

要求:

- 语句通顺, 语法准确, 可适当发挥;
- 60 词左右, 开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数。

Dear Steve,

New school days start, so I am busy every day. _____

What about your school life? Write to me please.
Good luck!

Wang Hao

Unit 3

How do you get to school?

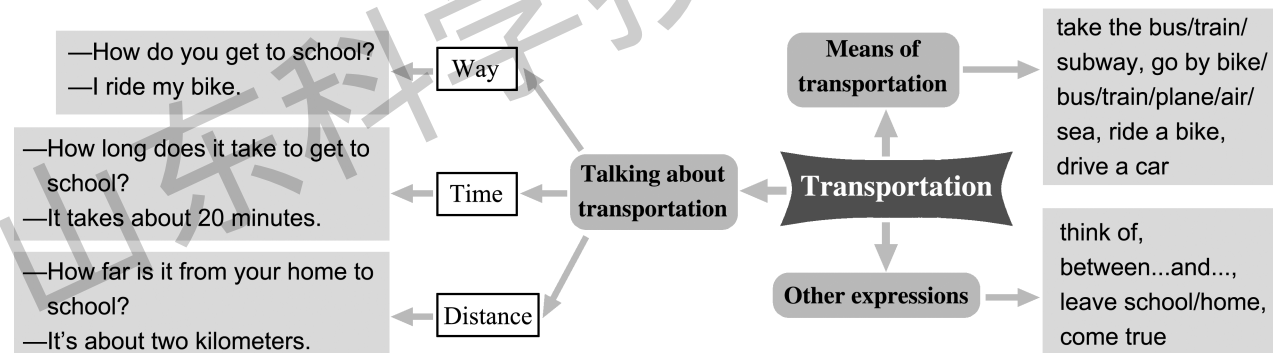
单元概要

本单元话题是“Transportation”，主要谈论出行方式。重点是如何使用“乘坐某种交通工具”的动词短语，掌握 how 引导的特殊疑问句及其简略回答。通过展现学生用不同交通方式上学的场景，呈现多种交通工具的名称及交通方式，并引领学生讨论“上学方式，出行时间，家校距离”等现实问题，规划最优的出行路线和方式；通过介绍偏远乡村孩子上学 的故事，教育学生关心偏远乡村的孩子，珍惜自己的美好生活，帮助他人分析问题、解决问题。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式谈论出行方式、出行时间及两地之间的距离；能运用“乘坐交通工具”的动词短语、数字表达思想，学习并掌握 how, how long, how far 引导的特殊疑问句和简略问答，能与他人交流出行计划；学会描述较为复杂的“换乘”方式，学会规划最优的出行路线和方式；通过对比自己与贫困地区学生出行时间、方式的不同，学会珍惜自己的生活和学习条件；运用网络等方式了解因地域差别导致的出行方式的差异，能制作一份翔实的“周末或假期出行规划图”。



文化探索

阅读本文，了解在纽约人们日常上班、上学的出行方式。

New York is a very large city with about 10,000,000 people. How do so many people travel around the city on their way to work or school? So, we should know something about its transport(交通).

In New York you can travel about the city by subway(地铁), bus, taxi and car. The subway runs on the railroad(铁路) lines under the city. It crosses the city at different points and goes to all parts of the city. Traveling by subway is the fastest way to get around the city.

The second way to travel around the city is by public(公共) bus. It's a slower way to travel. This is because the road traffic is often heavy.

You can also travel around the city by taxi. This is the most expensive way, but the taxi will take you to the very place you wish to go to. If traffic is heavy, the taxi will be slow. During the mornings and afternoons, there is the “rush hour”—the time when the traffic is very heavy with people going to and from work.



The last way to get around New York is using your own car. However, it's not easy for you to drive, when you are driving in the "rush hour". If there is an accident on the road, you will have to wait for a long time.

The best time to travel around the city is from 9 a. m. to 4 p. m. This is the time after the morning "rush hour" and before the evening "rush hour". Traffic will be less crowded because most people are already at school or at work.

Section A



重点突破

1. How do you get to school? 你怎样去上学?

【感知】(1) —How are you?

—I am fine.

(2) —How is the weather today?

—It's sunny.

(3) How do you usually go home every day?

(4) How long does it take you to get to school?

(5) How far is it from your home to school?

【思考】_____引导的特殊疑问句,用来询问交通方式、身体状况、对某事的看法及天气等。

_____用来提问时间长短,意为“多长时间”,或询问物体的长度。_____用来提问距离,意为“多远”。

【运用】

用 how, how far 或 how long 填空。

(1) He wants to know _____ his mother is, so he writes letters to her every month.

(2) Can you tell me _____ he lives from his school?

(3) I want to know _____ his parents go to work every day.

(4) Tim wants to know _____ it takes to go home from school.

(5) Do you know _____ the weather will be tomorrow?

2. —How does she get to school? 她怎样去学校?

—She usually takes the bus. 她通常乘公交车。

【感知】—How does your father get to work?

—He usually gets to work by bus.

【思考】(1) “How do/does sb. get to...?”是用来询问_____的交际用语,答语中交通方式的表达主要有以下几种: by+交通工具,例如乘坐公共汽车_____; take+a/the+交通工具,例如乘火车_____; drive+冠词/物主代词+交通工具,例如开车_____; ride+冠词/物主代词+交通工具,例如骑自行车_____。

(2) get to 意为“到达”,_____ London 意为

“到达伦敦”。与 get to 意义相近的词组还有: “reach+地点”, reach 为及物动词可直接加宾语; “arrive _____ + 小地点”和 “arrive _____ + 大地点”。

【运用】

(1) I usually _____ to the bus stop and then go to school by bus.

A. by bike B. on my bike

C. in my bike D. ride my bike

(2) Jim doesn't get to school _____ bike. He gets there _____ his father's car.

A. on; by B. by; by

C. by; in D. on; in

(3) —How do you _____ school every day?

—By bike.

A. get B. reach in C. arrive D. get to

3. How long does it take you to get to school? 你上学会用多长时间?

【感知】(1) It usually takes me half an hour to get to school.

(2) I spend 2 hours doing my homework every day.

【思考】“It takes sb. + 时间 + _____ sth.”意为“做某事花费某人多长时间”; 花费时间做某事,还可以用“spend+时间+on sth. / _____ sth.”表示。

【运用】

(1) —How long does it _____ you to go to Shanghai by subway?

—About 55 minutes.

A. take B. spend C. pay D. cost

(2) She spends two hours in working it out. (改为同义句)

It _____ her two hours _____ it out.

4. It's one hundred and five kilometers. 它长达 105 千米。

【感知】(1) There are three hundred students in our school.

(2) Hundreds of visitors come to Jinan on weekend.

【思考】hundred 前面有具体数字时,用“基数词+_____”表示“几百”; _____ 意为“数



百”,表示概数,此时不能用数词连用,但可以与 many, several 等词连用。

【运用】

用 hundred 或 hundreds of 填空。

- (1) _____ students in our school are from the countryside.
- (2) —How many our players were there in the 2012 London Olympics?
—About three _____.
- (3) There are _____ people on the beach.



基础强化

一、根据音标、汉语及句意填写单词




1. Helen and her friends take the _____ (地铁) to school every day.
2. He likes going to school by bike. So he _____ (骑) his bike to school every morning.
3. The cross-sea bridge is about two /'kiləmi:təz/ _____ long.
4. My cousin lives near a small _____ (河) and he likes swimming in it in summer.
5. A century(世纪) has a /'hʌndrəd/ _____ years.

二、单项选择

1. —_____ is the Summer Palace from here?
—About three kilometers away.
A. How long B. How far
C. How often D. How much
2. —Did your father _____ to work today?
—No, his car was broken.
A. walk B. drive C. ride D. take
3. —I wonder _____ it is from Shanghai to New York.
—It's about 15 _____ flight.
A. how long; hours' B. how far; hours'
C. how much; hour's D. how far; hours
4. It takes _____ 25 minutes _____ his homework.
A. him; to doing B. him; to do
C. his; to do D. his; doing
5. Eric is not going to Nanjing by _____ plane. Instead, he is taking _____ train.
A. /; the B. a; /
C. a; the D. the; a
6. Ann's home is about five kilometers _____ school.
A. away B. far away
C. away from D. far

7. —_____ do you go to school every day?
—By bike.
A. When B. Why C. How D. What
8. She usually _____ a taxi to school with her brother.
A. by B. in C. on D. takes
9. —Peter, how old is your father this year?
—_____. Today is his _____ birthday.
A. Fortieth; forty B. Forty; forty
C. Forty; fortieth D. Fortieth; fortieth
10. He wants to know _____.
A. where Lucy lives
B. where does Lucy live
C. Lucy lives where
D. where Lucy lives in

三、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. —How do you go to school?
_____ 
2. —_____
—Yes, he does. 
3. —Do you go to school on foot every day?
_____ 
4. —How long does it take to get to school?
_____ (15 minutes)
5. —_____ (how far)
—It's about two kilometers from home to school.
6. Jack, about, an hour, need, to, get home. (连词成句)

7. your father, his car, to work, drive, do, every day (?) (连词成句)

8. ride, do, their bikes, to, school, your friends (?) (连词成句)

四、用方框中的单词或短语填空

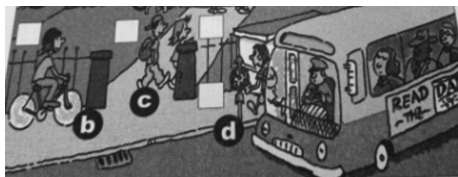
how long, what, how, how far, get to

1. _____ does it take you to get to the bridge?
2. Write to me when you _____ New York.
3. _____ do you think of the transportation in your town?
4. _____ is it from his home to the river?
5. _____ do students around the world get to school?



五、看图说话

假如你是 Rick, 请看图并用 5~6 句话描述一下早晨同学上学的方式。





能力提升

六、完形填空

Danny is a schoolboy. He 1 in a small town. His home is about ten kilometers 2 school and the roads are not flat (平的). So it's 3 for him to get to school. He 4 at about five thirty every day and has breakfast. Then he 5 for school at about six o'clock. First, he 6 his bicycle to the bus station. It takes about forty minutes. 7 the bus takes him to school. It usually takes about thirty minutes. Sometimes he has 8 time for breakfast at home, so he has something for breakfast on the bus. "I've never taken trains. It must be 9 more fun than taking buses," says Danny. He studies very hard at school. He hopes he can go to school in a big city some day. He can 10 a train to school then.

1. A. lives B. works C. plays D. teaches
2. A. at B. from C. in D. for
3. A. easy B. good C. interesting D. difficult
4. A. gets up B. gets to C. goes to bed D. goes to work
5. A. get B. leaves C. leave D. gets
6. A. takes B. sends C. drives D. rides
7. A. Then B. Before C. But D. After
8. A. much B. no C. not D. a
9. A. so B. little C. a lot D. no
10. A. gets B. takes C. get D. take

七、阅读理解

John lives in Shanghai. His home is not far

from his school. So he usually goes to school by bike. Every day it takes him fifteen minutes to get there. He always gets to school on time.

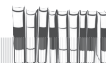
Susan is a teacher of a middle school in Beijing. Every day she goes to school by train. The train runs every twenty minutes. It only takes her about ten minutes to get to school.

Sally works at a clothes store. Her home is in a small village in Changsha. It is far from the clothes store. She usually goes to the store by bus. It takes her an hour every day. She must get up early every morning. She always gets there early.

1. John goes to school _____.
A. by bike B. by bus
C. by car D. by subway
2. It takes Susan about _____ minutes to get to school from her home by train.
A. fifteen B. ten C. thirty D. twenty
3. There are _____ trains from the train station to Susan's school every hour.
A. two B. three C. four D. five
4. Sally goes to the clothes store by bus because _____.
A. she can't ride a bike
B. she doesn't like walking
C. she lives far from the clothes store
D. there is no car in her village
5. Which of the following is TRUE?
A. Sally works in a middle school.
B. It takes John fifteen minutes to get to school.
C. Sally is always late for work.
D. The train station is far from the clothes store.

八、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话

- A: Hello, Tony. What are you busy doing these days?
B: I'm busy exercising. 1
A: What for? You're in good health.
B: Thank you. But I want to be much fitter.
A: 2
B: At Sunshine Sports Center. I'm a VIP of it.
A: Wow, cool! I'd like to exercise there, too.
3
B: Don't worry. I can help you.
A: Is it far from here?
B: Yes. It's about three kilometers from here.
4



A: Which bus should I take?

B: You need to take Bus No. 3 to Binjiang Road, and walk along that road to the end. Then you can see Sunshine Sports Center on your left.

5 It's easy to find it.

A: Thank you very much.

B: My pleasure.

- A. Where do you usually do sports?
B. You know, I want to lose my weight.
C. It's between a bank and a theater.
D. You'd better take a bus.
E. But I don't know the way there.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

Section B



重点突破

1. For many students, it is easy to get to school. 对于很多学生来说,上学是很容易的。

【感知】(1) *It's not easy for us to learn math well.*

(2) *To get to school on foot is difficult for them.*

【思考】“It is+adj. +(for/of sb.) +to do sth.”意为“对某人来说做某事是怎样的”,其中_____为形式主语,后面的动词不定式短语才是句子的真正主语。英语中,当动词不定式短语或动名词作主语时,谓语动词通常用_____形式。当动词不定式作主语时,常用 it 作形式主语,将动词不定式放在后面。

【运用】

(1) For many students _____ is not easy to learn English well.

- A. it B. this C. that D. he

(2) It is interesting to read books. (改写句子,句意不变)

= _____ is interesting.

= _____ is interesting.

2. There is a very big river between their school and the village. 在他们的学校和村庄之间有一条大河。

【感知】(1) *There are robots in people's home.*

(2) My father *has* a very cool car.

【思考】(1) there be 句型的结构为“there be+某人/某物+某地/某时”,意为“某地或某时有某人或某物”。there be 句型_____ (能/不能) 和 have/has 同时出现在一个句子中。

(2) between... and... 意为“在……和……之间”,连接两个并列的成分。between 一般用于_____之间, among 用于_____或三者以上的人或物之间。

【运用】

(1) There _____ many workers working in the factory.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

(2) My sister _____ two baseballs and one basketball.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

(3) There is a small bridge _____ the hill _____ the village.

- A. between; or B. between; and
C. from; to D. in; and

(4) The workers build a new road _____ the two villages.

- A. since B. between
C. among D. during

3. One 11-year-old boy, Liangliang, crosses the river every school day. 11 岁的男孩亮亮,每一个上学日都要过河。

【感知】(1) *My best friend is 14 years old.*

(2) *My best friend is a 14-year-old boy.*

(3) Please be careful when you *cross* the road.

(4) Please be careful when you go *across* the road.

【思考】(1) 11-year-old 意为“11 岁大的”,是由“基数词+单数名词+形容词”构成的复合形容词,常用来作_____。“11 years old”中三个词之间不用连字符连接,中间名词用复数,在句中作_____。

(2) cross 为动词,意为“横过,越过(横穿)”; across 为介词或副词,意为“横过”。cross = _____。

【运用】

(1) Gina is _____.

- A. 11-years-old B. 11 years old
C. 11-year-old D. 11 year old

(2) Mr. Han has a _____ daughter and he loves her very much.

- A. 3 year old B. 3-year-old
C. 3-years-old D. 3 years old



(3) For the students in the village, they must go on a ropeway to _____ the river to school.

- A. through B. across
C. cross D. go through

4. But he is not afraid because he loves school. 但是他不害怕,因为他喜欢上学。

【感知】(1) He *was afraid to go* out alone at night.

(2) She *was afraid of the dark*.

【思考】afraid 是形容词,意为“害怕的;畏惧的”。常用短语有:be afraid _____ sth. 意为“害怕做某事”;be afraid _____ sth. 意为“害怕某物”。

【运用】

- (1) The girl is afraid _____ (cross) the bridge.
(2) Study hard. Don't be afraid _____ (介词) difficulties.



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标、汉语提示及句意完成单词

- The post office is across from the street. So I have to c _____ the street.
- I must l _____ now. It's too late.
- At night I do my homework /br'twɪn/ _____ seven and eight o'clock.
- There is no /brɪdʒ/ _____ on the river, so you need to go there by boat.
- Jack is an _____ (八岁的) boy.
- I'm _____ (害怕) to go out at night alone.
- I want to be a doctor. I hope my dream can come t _____.
- My cousin is tall. He is quite _____ (像) his father.

二、单项选择

- _____ do you think _____ your school life?
A. How; like B. What; of
C. How; of D. What; about
- I'm _____, and I have a _____ sister.
A. 15 year old; 16-year-old
B. 15 years old; 16-year-old
C. 15-year-old; 16 years old
D. 15 year old; 16 year old
- We have a _____ holiday every National Day.
A. 7 day B. 7-days C. 7-day D. 7 day's
- Alan _____ sports, but he doesn't _____ swimming.

- A. like; like B. likes; likes
C. like; likes D. likes; like

5. I usually go home _____ bike but today I _____ a bus.

- A. by; take B. by; on
C. on; take D. by; by

6. It's my _____ to be an English teacher.

- A. dream B. job C. work D. habit

7. —Does Helen take the subway to school?

—No, she doesn't. She goes _____.

- A. by bus B. for the bus
C. on the bus D. with the bus

8. The big river runs _____ for the small boats. It's so dangerous(危险).

- A. too quick B. too quickly
C. not quick D. not quickly

9. The early bus _____ us to school every morning.

- A. picks B. gets C. walks D. takes

10. She wants to know _____.

- A. where does he live
B. how far is it from here to school
C. how she can get to the park
D. what does he think of the trip

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 他们的梦想会实现吗?

Can their dream _____ ?

2. 每天写作业大约花去我两小时。

_____ me about two hours to do the homework every day.

3. 从你家到学校有多远?

_____ is it from your home to school?

4. “一带一路”是东西方之间交流合作的象征。

The Belt and Road is the symbol of communication and cooperation _____ the East _____ the West.

5. 从你家到学校乘公交车要多久?

_____ does it take you to get from your home to school by bus?

6. 这里有五百本书。

There are _____ books.

7. 亮亮,一个11岁男孩,每天过河上学。

One _____ boy, Liangliang, _____ the river every school day.

8. 你认为这个故事怎么样?

_____ do you _____ of the story?



四、用方框内的单词填空,有两项多余

breakfast, minutes, lunch, gets, usually, rides,
from, takes, stop, leaves, lives, to

Jack 1 near a small town. It is about 15 kilometers 2 his home to school. Every day, he 3 up at six o'clock, takes a shower, and has a quick 4. Then he 5 for school at around half past six. First, he 6 his bike to the bus 7. That takes about ten 8. Then the early bus 9 him to school. The bus ride 10 takes about 25 minutes.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____
10. _____



能力提升

五、完形填空

Many people like to travel(旅行) by plane, but I don't like it because an airport(机场) is usually 1 from the city. You have to get there early and wait for 2 for the plane to take off and it is often late. You 3 open the windows. You can't choose the food. Planes are fast, but it still 4 hours to go out of the airport and into the city.

I like traveling by train. I think 5 are safe. Railway stations are usually in cities. When you are 6 for a train, you can catch another(另一个) one. You can 7 around in the train and open the windows. You can see many interesting things 8 your way. I know it takes a little more time. I also like cars. You can start your journey(行程) 9 you want to, and you don't need to get to a railway station or a bus stop. Also you can carry many things with you in a car. But sometimes 10 are too many cars on the road.

1. A. close B. big C. near D. far
2. A. minutes B. hours C. seconds D. quarters
3. A. shouldn't B. should
C. can't D. can
4. A. pays B. keeps C. has D. takes
5. A. trains B. buses C. subways D. cars
6. A. bad B. good C. late D. sorry
7. A. run B. walk C. dance D. play
8. A. by B. to C. on D. in

9. A. when B. why C. how D. who

10. A. here B. they C. there D. you

六、阅读理解

People in Los Angeles are known for their love of cars. The city is very large, and its public transportation is slow. So people drive everywhere. But now, a group of bicyclists are trying to get people out of their cars and on bikes.

Devon Fitzgerald says he has to be careful when he rides his bike in the streets. "A lot of people are in a rush, and it's very difficult to keep careful, for they would rather care for their speed than your safety." Although riding a bike to work can be dangerous, he prefers it to a car. "It's much simpler than driving a car. For example, I don't have to worry about parking."

Roger Rosas drives to work. "You always have to make sure you look to the other side because someone would rush across by bike. Or you can easily get into an accident."

To make bicycling safer, some people who live and work near each other are riding to work together, which they call a "bike train". Nona Varnado helped create the group L. A. Bike Trains. "You're in a big group. If you're afraid of riding alone, you can now ride with experienced riders." Nona said that people would feel safer by riding together in a group.

1. Devon Fitzgerald finds it _____ to ride his bike in the streets.
A. safe B. dangerous
C. boring D. exciting
2. Devon Fitzgerald likes riding a bike better because _____.
A. it's much cheaper
B. it is full of fun
C. it's safer everywhere
D. it's much easier
3. From the passage we know that _____.
A. riding in a "bike train" can help people feel safer
B. Devon Fitzgerald helped to create L. A. Bike Trains
C. Roger Rosas prefers riding a bike to driving a car
D. people can easily get into an accident when riding together



单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. How does Jack get to school?



2. When does Linda get home?



3. How far is it from Dale's home to the zoo?

A. 2 kilometers. B. 5 kilometers.

C. 7 kilometers.

4. How long does it take Helen to go to the bus stop?

A. 5 minutes. B. 10 minutes.

C. 15 minutes.

5. Where does Paul's brother live?

A. Near the bus stop.

B. Near the train station.

C. Near the subway station.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. How does Dave get home from school?

A. Take the bus. B. Ride the bike.

C. Take the school bus.

7. How far is it from Dave's home to school?

A. 5 kilometers. B. 10 kilometers.

C. 15 kilometers.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. How old is Bob's grandpa?

A. Sixty. B. Seventy. C. Eighty.

9. Where does Bob's grandpa live?

A. On a farm B. In a city. C. In a village.

10. How does Bob want to go there?

A. Take a bus. B. Take a train.

C. Take the subway.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Helen	
Age	Helen is 11. _____.
On weekdays	From Monday to Friday she goes to 12. _____.
On weekends	On Saturday, she goes to the farm by 13. _____.
	It takes them 14. _____ hours to get there.
	On Sunday, they fly a 15. _____.

二、单项选择

1. —Molly, how do you go to school?

—I go to school _____ bike.

A. on B. in C. at D. by

2. I am _____ of dogs. Please take your dog out of the room.

A. boring B. interested
C. difficult D. afraid

3. —_____ is it from your home to school?

—It is about 10 minutes' ride.

A. How far B. How old
C. How long D. How much

4. The river runs _____, so we can't cross it.

A. quick B. quickly C. easy D. easily

5. Miss Evans lives far from the company, so she usually _____ the subway to work.

A. rides B. gets C. takes D. comes

6. Peter is _____, but he can play chess well.

A. a 8-year-old boy B. an 8-year-old boy
C. a 8-years old boy D. an 8-years old boy

7. I like playing soccer. My _____ is to be a sports star.

A. life B. show
C. subject D. dream

8. You can find the bus stop _____ the library _____ the sports club.

A. either; or B. between; and
C. from; to D. in; and



9. It usually _____ Mum about half an hour to cook supper.

A. makes B. takes C. take D. taking

10. —What does Li Ping _____ her school life?
—Really great.

A. think of B. look at
C. talk to D. get to

三、完形填空

God let me take a snail(蜗牛) for a walk. I couldn't walk fast. The snail 1 its best to move its body, but it only walked a 2 distance. And it needed to rest.

I pushed it and shouted at it, 3 the snail looked at me sadly. It said, "I really have done my 4 !"

"Why, God? Why did you tell me to take a snail for a walk?" 5 answered me.

"All right! Maybe God is out to catch more snails!" Anyway, if God didn't care about it, why should I care? The snail 6 moving forward, and I went after it 7. When I smelled the 8, I found there was a garden in this direction. When I felt the warm wind, I found it was so gentle(温和的). I heard birds and bugs(昆虫) singing. I saw all the stars in the sky.

Why hadn't I had such a 9 experience before? 10. Did God just tell a snail to take me for a walk instead?

1. A. tried B. walked C. started D. made
2. A. long B. short
C. beautiful D. relaxing
3. A. and B. because C. but D. if
4. A. great B. fun C. best D. same
5. A. Nobody B. Everybody
C. Somebody D. Anybody
6. A. liked B. stopped C. forgot D. kept
7. A. quickly B. unhappily
C. friendly D. politely
8. A. birds B. cakes C. apples D. flowers
9. A. sad B. lovely C. boring D. tiring
10. A. Sure B. Thanks C. Fine D. Wait

四、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

A: Excuse me. Can you help me?

B: Yes. What's wrong?

A: 1

B: Oh, it's a little far. 2

A: Thanks. 3

B: It's about 5 kilometers.

A: Well, where is the bus stop?

B: Look, it's over there.

A: How long does it take?

B: 4

A: Oh, I see. I am happy to meet you here. 5

B: You're welcome.

- | |
|--|
| A. How far is it from here?
B. Thank you so much.
C. Where is the Xinhua Hospital?
D. You can take No. 301 bus.
E. About 10 minutes. |
|--|

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

Who is the world's most famous spy(特工)? Bond, James Bond! People also call him 007. He is handsome and fashionable. He can speak English, French, German and Russian. He is good at shooting(射击) and boxing(拳击). He beats bad men and saves the world.

Starting from 1953, Bond was a character(人物) in British writer Ian Fleming's books. In 1962, the first Bond movie came out. Over the last 55 years, there have been 23 Bond films. The Bond films have been very successful. About a third of the world's population has watched at least one Bond film.

People love the British spy for many reasons. But mostly because Bond shows us how meaningful(有意义的) life can be. Every 007 film is for upholding justice(伸张正义). Some boys have a dream of becoming James Bond.

1. Which of the following is NOT true about James Bond?
A. He is a real British spy.
B. He looks handsome and fashionable.
C. He can speak four kinds of languages.
D. He is good at shooting and boxing.
2. When did the first Bond movie come out?
A. In 1923. B. In 1953.
C. In 1962. D. In 2008.
3. What does the underlined word "successful" mean in paragraph 2?
A. 成功的 B. 糟糕的
C. 失败的 D. 平凡的
4. How popular are the Bond films, according to



the writer?

- A. Many of Bond films have been turned into books.
B. Every one out of three people has watched at least one Bond film.
C. Bond films are popular in every country.
D. Every boy in the world likes the Bond films.
5. What is the main idea of the last paragraph?
- A. What kinds of people like the Bond movies the most.
B. Why people love James Bond so much.
C. Bond and 007 are both the characters from films.
D. What the Bond films are mainly about.

六、按要求完成句子

1. Work hard and your dream can _____ (实现).
2. I like _____ (ride) my bike on weekends.
3. _____ (多远) is it from your home to school?
4. It usually _____ (take) Mum about 15 minutes to cook breakfast.
5. He runs _____ /'kwikli/, so I can't follow him.

七、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. —How do you go to school?
—
2. —_____ does it take you to get home?
—It's about twenty minutes.
3. goes to work, Miss Brown, on foot, usually (.)
4. cross, the farmer, a river, every day (.)
5. dream, it is, to have, Jim's, a new bike (.)



八、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

It is important for children to get to school safely and on time(按时). Luckily for them, there is a program called Free Home to School Transport. It gives children free rides to school. But to enjoy the free trip, children have to be qualified(符合资格).

Children can take Free Home to School Transport if they:

- ☆ are between 5 and 16 years old.
- ☆ are going to the nearest school.
- ☆ live farther away from school than the

statutory(法定的) walking distances (2 miles for students under 8, and 3 miles for those aged above 8).

No matter(无论) how far away children live from school, they can take the free transport if they have walking problems or there is no safe road for them. A safe road usually has traffic lights and should be clean.

Also, there are still Free Home to School Transport policies for children in poor families and children with special educational needs.

1. According to the passage, it is very important for children to get to school _____ and _____.
2. What is the program's name?
3. The underlined word "policies" means "_____" in Chinese.
A. 名额 B. 政策 C. 方法 D. 目标
4. 将文中画线的句子译成汉语。

九、书面表达

假如你是李华, 你的英国朋友 Jack 不久前来到你所在的城市。这个周末他想去新华影院(Xinhua Cinema)看电影, 但是不知道如何去。请你根据下面表格中的信息, 写一封电子邮件给他提一些建议。

要求: 60 词左右, 电子邮件的格式、开头已给出, 不计入总词数。

参考词汇: 出租车(taxi), 下车(get off the bus), first(第一), second(第二), third(第三)

交通方式	所需时间	注意事项
步行	约 40 分钟	/
乘出租车	约 15 分钟	大约需要 15 元
乘公共汽车	约 20 分钟	下车后步行约 3 分钟

Dear Jack,

You have three ways to get to Xinhua Cinema. _____

Unit 4

Don't eat in class.

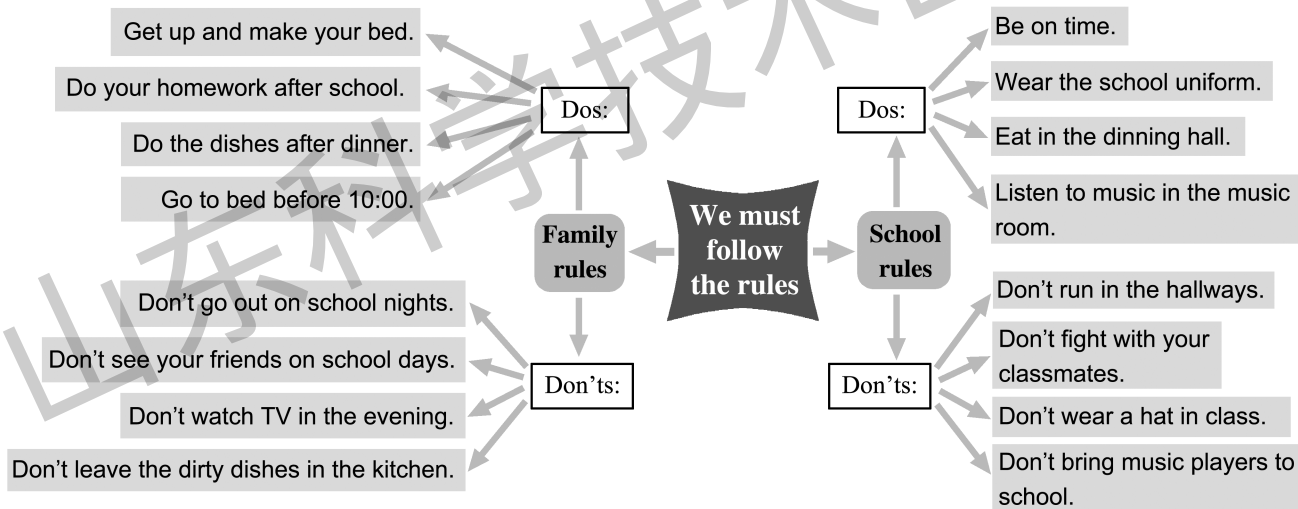
单元概要

本单元的中心话题是“Talk about rules”,通过谈论学校和家庭规则,让学生了解并掌握一些常见的规则表达方式,掌握谈论规则的语言结构,让学生体会、学习如下目标语言的表达:祈使句(肯定形式和否定形式)、情态动词 can 表达“许可”(permission)、情态动词 have to 和 must 表达“义务”(obligation),遵守学校、班级、家庭和社会公共场所的规章制度,养成良好的行为习惯。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容,能运用以下单词、短语和句式描述不同场合(学校、家庭和社会公共场合)的规章制度;学会判断规则的适切性,并能与同学合作修订或制定不同场合下的有效规则,增强规则意识,强化社会责任感;通过网络等了解中外校规、班规及家规的异同,学习西方孩子在遇到烦恼时向专业人士求助从而释放压力的方法;学会自主与同学合作,选择学校或家周围的一处公共场所,帮助修订或制定一份“和谐共处,你我他”的规则方案。



文化探索

在英国,许多家长为了孩子的健康成长设置了家规。家长们对于家规的看法如何呢?

British parents think family rules help children understand what behaviors(行为) are okay or not. As children grow, they will be in places where they have to follow rules. Following rules at home can help children learn to follow rules in other places. It is normal(正常) for children to break rules and test limits(限制). Consistent follow through when rules are broken help their child have a clear understanding about the importance of rules. They think young kids sometimes break rules because they simply forget. Not all broken rules occur because kids are testing the limits. But, Parents' responses(反应) should be the same no matter what the reason for breaking the rules.



Section A



重点突破

1. Don't arrive late for class. 上课不要迟到。

【感知】(1) We must *arrive at the airport* two hours early.

(2) Lucy will *arrive in Beijing* in two days.

(3) Helen sometimes *arrives here* late.

【思考】到达某地常用_____,后面常加介词_____或_____,而且一般小地方用_____,大地方用_____. arrive late for 意为“做某事迟到”,与_____同义,但 arrive late for 侧重到达的时间晚, be late for 侧重状态。如果后面是表示地点的副词,例如 here, there, home, abroad 等词时,则不需要介词。arrive 的同义词还有 get to 或 reach。

【运用】

(1) They arrive _____ Shanghai _____ a sunny morning.

- A. in; on B. in; in
C. at; on D. at; in

(2) He usually gets home at 4:45 in the afternoon. (改写句子,句意不变)

He usually _____ home at a quarter _____ five in the afternoon.

(3) 下次开会不要迟到。

Don't _____ for the meeting next time.

2. Can we wear a hat in class? 在课堂上我们能戴帽子吗?

【感知】(1) Helen *wears a new jacket* to school today.

(2) Please *put on your sweater*! It's cold outside.

(3) The little boy is too young to *dress himself*.

【思考】表示“穿;戴”常用_____,强调穿(戴)的状态,后面常加表示衣物、首饰、眼镜等事物的名词,相当于 be in...;而_____的意思是“穿上;戴上”,其宾语多为衣物,强调的是_____。dress 用作动词时,常用 dress sb.,意为“给某人穿衣服”,其形容词为_____。

【运用】

(1) 我必须穿运动鞋去学校吗,妈妈?

Do I _____ to _____ sports shoes to school, mom?

(2) Look! The movie star is _____ a pair of funny glasses. How cool!

- A. selling B. putting on

C. wearing

D. recycling

(3) wear uniforms, at school, do, we, have to (?)
(连词成句)

3. Can we bring music players to school? 我们能带音乐播放器来学校吗?

【感知】(1) *Bring me a cup of coffee*, please.

(2) Don't forget to *bring your homework to school* tomorrow.

(3) The little girl is hurt badly. I should *take* her to hospital at once.

【思考】_____意为“带来,拿来”,指把某人或某物从别处带到说话人的身边来;而_____的意思是“拿走,带走”,指把某人或某物从说话人的所在地带往别处。

【运用】

(1) Please _____ my watch to me.

- A. take B. bring C. get D. put

(2) 这些生日食物给过生日的人带来好运。

All the birthday food _____ good luck _____ the birthday person.

(3) 要下雨了,请随身带把伞。

It's going to rain. Please _____ an umbrella _____ you.

4. Don't fight at school. 不要在学校打架。

【感知】(1) *Be on time*, please!

(2) *Don't take photos* in the museum!

(3) *No talking*!

【思考】以上句子均为_____,表示命令、请求、建议或劝告等,常以动词_____开头(省略主语),如: Come in! 进来! 否定形式一般在动词前加_____或者用“No + 名词/动名词”,如: Don't be late. 不要迟到。No Talking! 禁止说话!

【运用】

(1) It's an important meeting tomorrow morning.

_____ (not be) late for it.

(2) _____ (not make) any noise!

Your mother is sleeping in the room.

(3) _____ (not speak) with your

mouth full of food and _____ (be) polite please.

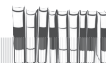


基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及句意完成单词

1. As students, we'd better not break the _____/ru:lz/. Try to be good students.

2. _____ (not fight) with each other at school.



Be friendly to each other.

3. We can't eat lunch in class. But we can eat our lunch in the _____/'daiɪŋ/hall every day.
4. Don't run in the _____/'hɔ:lweɪz/. It's very dangerous for us students.
5. No _____ (talk) in class! We should be quiet and listen to the teacher carefully.
6. The students have to wear the school u _____ on school days. Please obey the rules.
7. The meeting is really important. Don't a _____ late for it, please.
8. After a long time work, they must r _____ and have a good rest.
9. We have to be q _____ in the school library.
10. He isn't friendly to his classmates. He often f _____ with others.

二、单项选择

1. We _____ eat in the classroom. But we can eat in the dining hall.
A. don't B. didn't C. can't D. aren't
2. —Can you _____ your dictionary _____ school tomorrow, Peter?
—Sure, Mr. Li, I will.
A. take; to B. take; for
C. bring; to D. bring; for
3. —Please don't throw paper on the ground.
—_____, I won't.
A. Sorry B. Excuse me
C. That's all right D. It doesn't matter
4. Drivers must _____ seat belts(安全带) when they drive their cars. That will be safe.
A. in B. wear C. put on D. dress
5. It's raining heavily all day, so I _____ stay at home.
A. must B. have to
C. must to D. can

三、根据提示或图片补全问句或答语

1. — _____ (in class)
—Sorry, Mr. Black.
2. — _____
—No, I never fight with my friends.
3. — _____
—No, you can't wear your clothes at school.
4. —What is the rule in the hospital?
— _____



四、连词成句

1. a hat, we, can, wear, in class (?)

2. on time, must, you, be, for school (.)

3. a uniform, do, at school, have to, wear, David (?)

4. to school, you, have to, don't, come, every day (.)

5. the library, be quiet, Jack, have to, in (.)

五、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 我们每天不得不做作业。
I _____ do our homework every day.
2. 我们不能在班上吃东西。
We can't _____.
3. 在音乐课上我们可以唱歌、跳舞。那是我最喜爱的学科。
We _____ sing and dance in our _____. That's my favorite subject.
4. —上课不要再迟到了。
—对不起,我不会了。
—Don't _____ for class.
—_____, I won't.
5. 按时完成作业很重要。
It is _____ to finish our homework _____.

六、选择合适的单词或短语填空

arrive, hallways, listen, dining hall, wear

1. We can't run in the _____ or classrooms in our school.
2. —Do you have to eat in the _____ at your school?
—Yes, we do.
3. We can't _____ late for school.
4. Don't _____ to music in the classrooms or the hallways.
5. We can _____ shirts in summer(夏天).



能力提升

七、完形填空

Rules are very 1 in our daily lives. We must follow the rules. When we walk on the road, we must follow the traffic rules. 2 people must obey(遵守) the traffic rules.

We can see many traffic signs(交通标志) on both sides of the roads. Young or old, men or 3,



walkers or drivers mustn't break(违反) the traffic signs. If you break them, it will be 4.

Each traffic sign 5 its meaning. Do you see the sign "P" along the road? Do you know its meaning? In big cities, there are 6 cars, trucks, bikes and buses. They can't stop on the streets 7 any time. If a driver wants to stop his car, he must 8 a place for his car—a car stop. A car stop 9 like a special "hotel" and it's for cars to live in. "P" is the first letter of the word "Park"(停车) and it means "You can stop your car here!"

10 important to obey the traffic rules.

1. A. easy B. important
C. difficult D. healthy
2. A. All B. Some C. Many D. Much
3. A. woman B. women C. girls D. boys
4. A. relaxing B. boring
C. dangerous D. cool
5. A. have B. has C. makes D. takes
6. A. too much B. too many
C. a lot D. lot of
7. A. at B. in C. on D. for
8. A. look at B. look like
C. look for D. look after
9. A. are B. is C. look D. has
10. A. This is B. They are
C. That is D. It is

八、阅读理解

Hello, boys and girls! Welcome to our museum. Our museum is free. You don't have to pay any money. But we have some important rules for you. Please remember them and do as what I say. You shouldn't break the rules.

Firstly, don't have food or drink here. You may make our museum dirty.

Secondly, you can take some photos in our museum, but don't touch(触摸) the things here.

Thirdly, keep quiet in the museum. Don't talk loudly.

Fourthly, the museum is not open after five o'clock in the afternoon. Please leave before five.

Have a good time here! Thank you for your listening.

1. These are some rules for the _____.
A. store B. park C. school D. museum
2. What's the Chinese meaning of the word "free" in the article?
A. 高兴的 B. 迅速的
C. 免费的 D. 自由的

3. Students can _____ in the museum.

- A. take photos B. have food and drink
C. touch the things D. talk loudly

4. When is the museum closed?

- A. All day. B. Before 5:00 a. m.
C. Before 5:00 p. m. D. After 5:00 p. m.

5. We can learn from the article that _____.

- A. students don't want to pay any money
B. the museum has five rules for the students
C. the speaker hopes the students have a good time
D. the speaker who tells the rules is a teacher

九、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

A: Hello, My dear friends! We have a lot of rules in our school.

B: 1

A: Don't run in the hallways. Don't listen to music in the classroom. 2

B: 3

A: We can eat in the dining hall, but we can't eat in the classroom.

B: Can we wear hats in class?

A: 4

B: 5

A: Yes, we have to wear uniforms.

B: Oh, there are so many rules.

- A. No, we can't.
B. Do we have to wear uniforms at school?
C. Can we eat in school?
D. Don't arrive late for school.
E. What are the rules?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

Section B



重点突破

1. There are *too many* rules. 规则太多了。

【感知】(1) He has *too many questions* to ask you.

(2) We have *too much homework* to do every day.

(3) I'm afraid that this sweater is *much too big* for me.

【思考】*too many* 的中心词是_____, *too* 用来修饰 *many*, 它们用来修饰可数名词的复数; *too much* 的中心词是_____, 用来修饰不可数名词; *much too* 的中心词是_____, 用来修饰形容词的原级和副词。



【运用】

- (1) He has _____ rules at home, and he has to do _____ housework at home, too.

A. too many; too much
B. too much; too many
C. many; much too
D. much too; too much

- (2) 他在家花费太多的时间玩电脑游戏。

It takes him _____ time to play computer games at home.

- (3) 车上人太多,太拥挤了。

There are _____ people on the bus. It's much too crowded.

2. Don't leave the dirty dishes in the kitchen. 不要把脏的餐具留在厨房里。

【感知】(1) I left my math book at home. I am very upset.

- (2) Don't forget the tickets and the umbrella.

- (3) She left the bag on the bus but it may not be there any longer.

【思考】_____在表示“遗忘”时,通常要与表示地点的状语连用,意为“把某物忘在某地”。

_____通常不能与表示地点的副词或短语连用,只表示“遗忘”,后面可接不定式或者动名词作宾语,即 forget to do sth. 或 forget doing sth.。

【运用】

- (1) I may _____ (leave/forget) my bag on the bus this morning.

- (2) Don't _____ (leave/forget) your mobile phone at home. You need to receive my messages.

- (3) Oh, I _____ taking my key. This morning I went to work in such a hurry that I _____ the key to my office at home.

A. forgot; forgot B. leave; left
C. forgot; left D. left; forgot

3. After dinner, I can't relax, either. 晚饭后,我也不能放松。

【感知】(1) I didn't do my homework yesterday, and Bob didn't do his, either.

- (2) We should hand in them on time, too.

- (3) Gina also likes playing soccer with us.

【思考】too, also 和 either 都有“也”的含义:

_____用于否定句句末,前面常用逗号隔开;

_____用于肯定句句末,前面常用逗号隔开;

_____用于肯定句中,较正式,放在实义动词之前,系动词、助动词、情态动词之后。

【运用】

用 too, also 或 either 填空。

- (1) David doesn't like rice noodles. His son, Bob doesn't, _____.

- (2) You are _____ an excellent student.

- (3) My father is an English teacher. Helen's mother is an English teacher, _____.

4. Parents and schools are sometimes strict, but remember, they make rules to help us. 家长和学校有时很严格,但记住,他们制定规则是为了帮助我们。

【感知】(1) He is a strict teacher.

- (2) The mother is strict with her children.

- (3) We should be strict in our studies and we should be very responsible for ourselves.

【思考】strict 是形容词,意为“_____”;对某人要求严格用 _____,对某事要求严格用 _____。

【运用】

- (1) 我的老师对孩子们要求非常严格。

My teachers are very _____ children.

- (2) She is not only strict _____ his son, but also strict _____ her own work.

- (3) The man is so _____ with his daughter that he keeps her finishing all her work.

A. pleased B. sorry
C. careful D. strict



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及句意完成单词

- Locus has to _____/'præktis'/playing the guitar every evening. He likes it very much.
- I have to wear my s _____ shoes for the P. E. class. My teacher is very strict.
- Don't l _____ to music in class. The teacher will be unhappy.
- There are too many r _____ in our school. We must follow them.
- It's very cold _____/aʊt'saɪd/. Please put on more clothes when you go out.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

- "Please be quiet. No _____ (talk)!" says our geography teacher angrily.
- Please remember _____ (bring) your photos here when you come back.
- Can you help me _____ (make) dumplings?
- You must _____ (be) more careful with your homework next time.



5. The boss (老板) always keeps these workers _____ (work) over 10 hours a day.

三、单项选择

- Remember _____ me this evening.
A. to call B. call C. calls D. calling
- There are _____ rules in my home. I have _____ homework to do today.
A. too many; too much
B. too much; many too
C. too many; much too
D. much too; many too
- He is very strict _____ his children.
A. in B. at C. with D. to
- "No _____!" says the sign on the wall.
A. smoke B. smoking
C. smokes D. to smoke
- What did Mary have _____ breakfast this morning?
—She got up late and hurried to school _____ breakfast.
A. for; without B. at; without
C. for; after D. at; after

四、连词成句

- exercise, do, in, not, the hallways (.)

- eat, you, can not, in class (.)

- Gina, can, wear, in class, a hat (?)

- Li Chen, go to school, the afternoon, has to, in (.)

- they, listen to music, have to, room, in, the music (.)

五、选词并用其适当形式填空

rule, join, lucky, read, wash

Emily has so many 1. She has to do her homework after school. She can't go out on school nights. She has to 2 the dishes after dinner, then she can watch TV half an hour. She likes 3. She usually reads books at night. She has to be in bed by 10 o'clock, because she has to get up early the next morning. She 4 a music club. She likes to practice the guitar every day. She thinks she is 5.

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

六、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

- 我不得不做英语作业。
I _____ do my English homework.
- 放学后她得练弹钢琴。
She _____ practice the piano _____ school.
- 我们可以在食堂吃饭。
We _____ eat in the school _____ hall.
- 在音乐课上我们可以唱歌跳舞。
We _____ sing and dance _____ classes.
- 十点钟前你必须得睡觉吗?
Do you _____ be in bed before 10:00?



能力提升

七、完形填空

Lucy lives with a very mean (冷酷的) family. She has to do all the housework. She makes the beds. She does the dishes. She 1 the meals. She even takes 2 the garbage (垃圾).

One day the family goes to a 3 at the prince's palace (皇宫) without her. Lucy is 4. She says, "I want to go and dance, too!"

Then a fairy princess comes and says, "I can 5 you." She gives Lucy a party dress and a pair of glass 6. Then she says, "Come home early. My magic (魔力) ends at midnight. I'm just learning this job."

Lucy goes to the party and 7 with the prince. She forgets about the 8. Then she sees a clock. It is almost midnight. Lucy 9 home, but she loses one of her glass shoes on the way.

The prince wants to marry Lucy, but all he has is the glass shoe. Many women try on the shoe, but it doesn't fit. The prince 10, "Everyone has such big feet!" Then one day, Lucy tries it on, and it fits!

The prince and Lucy get married, and they live happily ever after.

- A. eats B. cooks C. buys D. gives
- A. with B. up C. in D. out
- A. party B. movie C. picnic D. concert
- A. happy B. sad C. excited D. tired
- A. see B. take C. help D. bring
- A. shoes B. hats C. pants D. gloves
- A. sings B. dances C. plays D. talks
- A. clothes B. food C. music D. time



9. A. goes B. walks C. runs D. gets
10. A. thinks B. hopes C. finds D. knows

八、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

Little Peter is a boy of nine. He began to go to school when he was six, and now he is in Grade Three. He lives not far from the school, but he is often late for class. He likes watching TV in the evening and goes to bed late. So he can't get up on time in the morning.

This year, Mrs Black, Peter's aunt, works in Peter's school. She is strict with Peter and often tells the boy to obey the school rules and come to school on time. Yesterday morning Peter got up late. When he (1) hurried to school. It was a quarter past eight. His aunt was waiting for him at the school gate.

(2) "You are ten minutes late for the first class, Peter," Mrs Black said angrily. "Why are you often late for class?" "Every time, when I got to the street corner, I always see a (3) guidepost: it says, 'SCHOOL—GO SLOW!'"

1. Little Peter is a boy of nine. (改写句子, 句意不变)

2. Why is Peter often late for school?

3. 请给出(1)处画线部分 hurried to school 的汉语意思。

4. 请将(2)处画线句子译成汉语。

5. 请猜猜画线(3)处单词的含义。

九、用方框内所给动词的适当形式填空

learn, study, do, get, clean

Maria comes from America. She is twelve years old. She 1 at No. 14 Middle School. She lives in China now. She wants 2 Chinese well. She says Chinese is interesting but very difficult, and she likes to know more about China.

Yesterday was Sunday. She 3 up very early. She ran for a long time. Then she stayed at home. She helped her mother 4 her room. She 5 her homework in the morning and played soccer in the afternoon.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

单元评估

一、听力测试

(一) 请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题, 从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中, 选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What are they talking about?



2. What is the rule?



3. What does John wear today?

A. Jacket. B. T-shirt. C. Uniform.

4. What does the boy have to do first?

A. Watch the basketball game.
B. Do his homework.
C. Do the dishes.

5. Where can he listen to music?

A. In the dining room.

B. In the classroom.

C. In the music room.

(二) 请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题, 从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中, 选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话, 回答第 6、7 题。

6. What do they want to do?

A. See friends.
B. Play computer games.
C. Watch a tennis game.

7. What does the boy have to do on weekends?

A. Clean his room. B. Read a book.
C. Help his mom make dinner.

听第二段对话, 回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. What's the date today?

A. March 25th. B. April 25th.
C. May 25th.

9. Whose birthday is coming?

A. Jim's. B. Jim's mother's.
C. Jim's father's.



10. What does the boy want to buy?

A. A T-shirt. B. A book. C. A watch.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表11至15空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Follow the Rules	
Place	Welcome to the school 11. _____.
Rules	You can't be 12. _____ in it.
	Don't 13. _____ to music here.
	You can't bring any 14. _____ or eat anything.
	Don't 15. _____ photos in it.

二、单项选择

- Tom, _____ in the hallways.
A. not run B. doesn't run
C. not running D. don't run
- We have to arrive _____ the station on time.
A. for B. to C. at D. in
- Tony, remember _____ the dog.
—OK, dad.
A. feed B. to feed C. feeds D. feeding
- We are students, so we _____ wear the uniform.
A. have to B. has to C. get D. hope
- There are _____ rules at home.
A. too many B. too much
C. much too D. a lot
- He often _____ English with the classmates.
A. meets B. asks
C. talks D. practices
- Alice, please help me do _____ dishes.
—OK, Mom. I am coming.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
- Who is your math teacher?
—Mr. Miller. He is very strict _____ us.
A. with B. in C. for D. to
- I don't like chicken for dinner.
—I don't like it, _____.
A. too B. only C. either D. never
- Eating well can help us _____ healthy.
—You are right.
A. find B. keep C. get D. have

三、完形填空

Dear Sally,

How are you? I'm happy that you can do the things you 1 at home. I never have fun, because there are too many 2 in my family. My parents are strict. I have to 3 at six o'clock every morning. And I have to make my bed 4 before breakfast and then go to school. I can't play

with my friends after school. I have to do 5 homework. After dinner I have to take the dog for 6 walk in the park. I can't watch TV on school nights. I have to 7 the violin for an hour. I can't go to bed late. I have to be in bed 8 nine o'clock. On weekends I have to clean my room and 9 the dishes. I also have to go to learn the violin on Sundays. I'm 10 tired. Can you help me?

Yours,
Lisa

- A. leave B. like C. learn D. have
- A. rules B. boxes
C. clothes D. numbers
- A. have breakfast B. leave home
C. get up D. go to school
- A. small B. big C. tidy D. dirty
- A. me B. my C. us D. our
- A. a B. an C. the D. /
- A. play B. watch C. draw D. sing
- A. on B. at C. with D. to
- A. eat B. buy C. make D. do
- A. only B. really C. also D. never

四、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话

- A: Emily, can you go to the movies tonight with me?
B: I'd love to. 1
A: What a pity! I can go out tonight because I have no homework today.
B: 2 I want to go out but I have too many rules in my family.
A: 3 Like what?
B: I can't play with my friends after school.
A: Really?
B: Yeah. I have to go home by 5:30 p. m. and do my homework.
A: Oh! 4 I have to practice playing the piano every day.
B: Do you have to wash your clothes?
A: No, I don't. 5

A. You are so lucky!
B. Family rules?
C. But I can't go out on school nights.
D. My mother helps me wash the clothes.
E. It's too bad.

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

五、阅读理解

Good morning, everyone! Welcome to our school. Now you are students of a middle school.

[illegible]

Unit 5

Why do you like pandas?

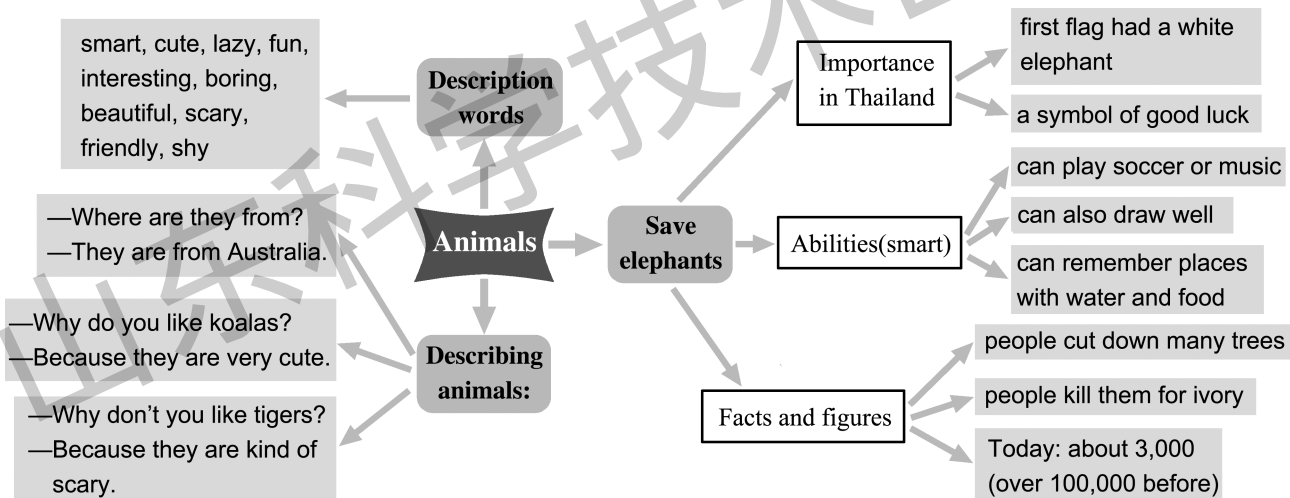
单元概要

本单元的中心话题是“Describe animals”，谈论动物的名称、生长环境及习性，谈论动物的喜好及原因；通过运用“why—because”句型引出目标语言：动物名称、描述动物特点的形容词，以及 why do/don't 句式。通过本单元的学习关注濒危动物，令人意识到关爱动物的重要性，呼吁人们保护动物、保护自然，树立环保意识，增强环保观念。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式谈论动物的习性，真实表达对各种动物的喜好及原因；通过体验“参观动物园”的主题情境，能够准确说出各种动物的名称，描述动物的生长环境和习性。通过阅读保护濒危动物——大象的语篇，学会建构思维导图的阅读策略，增强分析概括能力；加强动物保护意识，增进人与动物和谐共处的情感，提升人文素养。



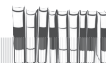
文化探索

同一个问题，孩子和大人的着眼点和看法是不同的。布莱克先生的这次经历就很好地说明了这一点。

Mr. Black was a businessman(商人) and he was very rich(有钱的). One day he went on a trip to the countryside with his 5-year-old son Henry. He wanted to show his son how poor(贫穷的) people lived, so they spent a day and a night on the farm of a very poor family.

When they got back from their trip, Mr. Black asked Henry, "My dear son, how was your trip?" "Very good, dad!" "Did you see how poor people lived?" the father asked. "Yes!" "And what did you learn?" Henry answered, "We have a dog at home, and they have four. We have a pool(游泳池). It's in the middle of the garden. And they have a river. It has no end(尽头). We have expensive lamps(昂贵的灯) in the garden and they have stars(星星)."

When little Henry finished, Mr. Black was speechless(无话可说的).



Questions:

What's Mr. Black's purpose(目的) of their trip to the countryside? What does Henry think of their trip? Do you agree with(赞同) Henry about the trip? Why or why not?

Section A



重点突破

1. Because they are *kind of* interesting. 因为他们有点有趣。

【感知】(1) She is *kind of* shy.

(2) This is *a kind of* fruit.

(3) There are *all kinds of* books in the library.

【思考】*kind of* 的意思是“_____”，相当于_____，表示程度，常用来修饰形容词或副词；而 *kind* 还可以用作名词，意思是“种类”。*a kind of* 的意思是“_____”；*all kinds of* 的意思是“_____”，“不同种类的”可表达为_____，常用来修饰名词。*kind* 还可作形容词，意为“善良的，友好的”。

【运用】

(1) Our English teacher is *kind* _____ us and sometimes she is *kind* _____ serious.

A. of; to

B. to; of

C. of; of

D. to; to

(2) 这位小姑娘有几分害羞。

This little girl is _____ shy.

(3) 我们服装店有促销活动，销售各种各样的服装。

We sell all _____ clothes at our great sale.

2. Why don't you like the cat? 你为什么不喜欢那只猫呢？

【感知】(1) Why don't you go with us?

(2) Why not go to bed early?

(3) How about going to the museum?

【思考】“Why don't you...?”意为“你为什么...呢？”，可以用来向对方提出建议，相当于_____，后加动词原形，而“How/what about...?”后加名词或动名词。两者都是用来提出建议的句型。

【运用】

(1) Look! It's raining heavily outside. Why not _____ (take) an umbrella with you?

(2) _____ go to visit him by yourself?

A. Why not you

B. Why don't

C. Why aren't you D. Why not

(3) 为什么不亲自和她交流一下？

_____ you communicate with her in person?

3. But I like tigers a lot. 但是我很喜欢老虎。

【感知】(1) It rains *a lot* this month.

(2) Thanks *a lot* for helping me.

(3) I have *a lot of* fruit every day.

【思考】*a lot* 意为“_____”，相当于副词词组，常用来修饰动词、形容词或副词；而 *a lot of* = _____，意为“_____”，相当于形容词词组，常用来修饰名词，相当于 *many* 或 *much*。

【运用】

(1) I love my pet dog _____ and I often play with it at home.

A. a lot of

B. lots of

C. a little

D. a lot

(2) Mary likes lions very much. (改为同义句)

Mary likes lions _____.

(3) I have _____ homework to do today, so I am very busy.

A. many

B. a lot

C. a lot of

D. a little

4. Yes, you are right. 是的，你是对的。

【感知】(1) —It's not easy for us to finish the work.

—Yeah, *you are right*.

(2) —Please hurry up! We are late.

—*All right!* I'm coming.

(3) —I'm sorry to trouble you.

—*That's all right*.

【思考】*right* 用作形容词，意为“正确的，恰当的”，用来赞同对方的说法，表示你是对的，用_____，也可以用“*That's right.*”；表示同意对方的建议要求，意为“好的”，应该用_____；常用来回答别人的道歉或感谢；表示“没关系”时用_____，相当于“*It doesn't matter.*”或“*You're welcome.*”等。

【运用】

(1) —Let's go to the zoo after the test.

—_____

A. Excuse me.

B. All right.

C. It doesn't matter. D. You're right.



(2) 是的,你说得对。

Yes, _____.

(3) —Thank you very much for helping me.

— _____



基础强化

一、根据句意及汉语提示填写单词

1. They can't remember those _____ (地方).
2. All of us have _____ (超过) fifty books.
3. He needs to drink some _____ (水).
4. There are a lot of _____ (树) around the village.
5. Linda doesn't like the tigers because they are _____ (吓人的).

二、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. There are some _____ (animal) in the zoo.
2. Let's _____ (swim) in the lake(湖).
3. Why _____ she _____ (want) to see the pandas?
4. The koalas are very _____ (interest).
5. Let's have our meal _____ (one).
6. What do you want _____ (see) first?
7. —Does your sister like _____ (panda)?
—Yes, she likes them very much.
8. The giraffes are b _____. I like them very much.

三、单项选择

1. I like this book because it's very _____.
A. cute B. interesting
C. smart D. boring
2. — _____ do you like cats?
—Because they are very smart.
A. Why B. Where
C. What D. When
3. Let's _____ the lions first.
A. see B. to see C. see to D. seeing
4. These tigers are scary. I don't like _____.
A. him B. it C. them D. their
5. —Is that _____ elephant?
—Yes. And _____ elephant is 3 years old.
A. a; the B. an; an
C. a; an D. an; the
6. John, can your dog walk _____ two legs?
A. by B. on C. in D. at
7. Dale is _____ and he doesn't talk much.
A. free B. scary C. shy D. clean

8. — _____

—They are from South Africa.

- A. Where are the lions?
- B. Why do you like lions?
- C. What animals do you like?
- D. Where are the lions from?

9. —Helen, don't _____ to come here before 6:30. We'll have a meeting.

—OK. I'll arrive on time.

- A. learn B. want
- C. forget D. like

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 他们是我最喜欢的动物。
They're my _____.
2. 我喜欢大熊猫,因为它们有几分可爱。
I like _____ because they are _____ cute.
3. 考拉很懒惰,喜欢整天睡觉。
Koalas are very _____. They like sleeping _____.
4. 这种动物会两条腿走路。
This kind of animal can _____ two _____.
5. 去参观动物园怎么样?
_____ visiting the zoo?

五、从方框内选择适当的句子补全对话

Mary: Many new animals are in the zoo. Do you know?

Betty: Oh? 1

Mary: Pandas, lions, monkeys, giraffes and elephants.

Betty: Let's go and see them.

Mary: OK. 2

Betty: I want to see pandas first.

Mary: 3

Betty: Because they are very cute. 4

Mary: I like elephants.

Betty: 5

Mary: Because they are big, but they are very friendly.

- | |
|---|
| A. What do you want to see first?
B. Why do you like them?
C. What do you like?
D. What are they?
E. Why do you want to see them first? |
|---|

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____



能力提升

六、完形填空

My parents and I like animals. And we often go to the 1 to see them 2 the weekends. We often 3 a bus to go there because my home is 4 far from the zoo. Of all the animals in the zoo, I 5 tigers best. Sometimes I want to give some 6 to them. 7 my parents don't let me do it. Sometimes I think animals in the zoo may 8 to go back to the forest. But I also think zoos are good places 9 animals. Because people give them 10, they're not hungry every day. Do you think so?

1. A. library B. zoo C. park D. hotel
2. A. on B. in C. of D. at
3. A. by B. ride C. in D. take
4. A. a kind of B. all kinds of C. kinds of D. kind of
5. A. enjoy B. like C. hope D. wish
6. A. fruit B. flowers C. meat D. cakes
7. A. But B. And C. So D. Or
8. A. let B. have C. want D. meet
9. A. on B. at C. for D. in
10. A. water B. food C. help D. money

七、任务型阅读

Today is Sunday. It is sunny (晴朗的).
 (1) Dale and Tom don't go to school. They want to go to the zoo, (2) because there is an elephant in the zoo. They take a bus to the zoo. After one hour, they get to the zoo. They see the elephant.
 (3) 她真的很漂亮。Her name is Ling. (4) 她来自非洲。She is only five years old. She's very quiet. Children like her a lot. (5) They want to play with her, but Ling is very shy. People in the zoo tell them to be quiet.

1. 把(1)句译成汉语。

2. 把(2)句译成汉语。

3. 把(3)句译成英语。

4. 把(4)句译成汉语。

5. 把(5)句译成汉语。

Section B



重点突破

1. People say that "an elephant never forgets". 人们说“一只大象永远不会忘记”。

【感知】(1) "Don't forget to bring your homework to school next time," our teacher said to us.

(2) He forgets turning off the light when he leaves the room. He is forgetful (健忘的).

(3) Please remember to do your homework at home.

【思考】“忘记去做某事”用_____；“忘记做过某事”用_____。forget 的反义词为_____，“记着做某事”用_____，“记着做过某事”用_____。

【运用】

(1) Don't forget _____ (bring) your umbrella with you. It is going to rain.

(2) I am very sorry. I forgot _____ (do) my homework. I won't forget next time.

(3) I am sure I remember _____ (meet) all of you in Grade Seven. Don't you remember?

2. But elephants are in great danger. 但是大象们处于危险中。

【感知】(1) Many animals are in danger. We must try our best to save them.

(2) The wounded soldier is out of danger.

(3) It's very dangerous to play on the road.

【思考】danger 是不可数名词，“处于危险之中”用_____；“脱离险境”用_____。danger 的形容词是_____，意思是“危险的”。另外“in+名词”短语还有 in trouble, in person, in public 等。

【运用】

(1) Many kinds of wild animals are _____. We must do something to save them.

- A. in fact B. in time
C. in silence D. in danger

(2) 让我们齐心协力拯救处于危险的动物吧。

Let's work together to save the animals _____.

(3) "Don't play with fire. It is really _____."



(danger).” the father said to his son.

3. People **cut down** many trees so elephants are **losing their homes**. 人们砍伐大量树木,因此大象正在失去他们的家园。

【感知】(1) Our government tries to stop people from **cutting down** trees.

(2) Could you help me to **cut up** the vegetables?

(3) He made a decision to **cut off** his right arm.

【思考】“砍倒”是_____;“切碎”是_____;“切除”是_____。这些都是“动词+副词”词组,如果接代词,要放在它们中间。如:cut it/them down; cut it/them up 等。

【运用】

(1) We should not _____ trees because they are good for our environment.

- A. cut down B. write down
C. turn down D. put down

(2) 砍伐树木是不对的。

It's not right to _____ trees.

(3) These are apple trees. Why are you cutting _____?

- A. down it B. it down
C. down them D. them down

4. We must **save the trees and not buy things made of ivory**. 我们必须拯救树木,拒绝购买象牙制品。

【感知】(1) This kind of shirt **is made of** silk. It feels soft.

(2) Many products **are made in** China.

(3) This piece of wood **is made into** a model plane by Uncle Wang.

【思考】made of ivory 是“_____”的意思,修饰前面的 things,作后置定语。be made of 的意思是“_____”。“在哪儿生产”是_____;“把……制成”是_____。

【运用】

(1) We want to save elephants, so we must stop buying things _____ ivory.

- A. are made of B. making of
C. made of D. to make from

(2) 这些杯子是玻璃制成的,它们是如此漂亮。

These glasses are _____ glass. They are so beautiful.

(3) —Do you believe that paper is made _____ wood?

—Yes, I do. And you can see that books are made _____ paper. (用介词填空)



基础强化

一、单项选择

1. I think koalas are _____ animals. I don't want to see them.

- A. beautiful B. interesting
C. ugly D. funny

2. Pandas are from _____.

- A. China B. England
C. Australia D. America

3. —Is that _____ elephant?

—No, it's _____ lion.

- A. an; a B. an; an C. a; an D. a; a

4. —_____ see the giraffes.

—Oh, I don't like them. Why don't we see the pandas?

- A. Let's B. Let they
C. Let I D. Let we

5. —_____

—Africa.

- A. What animals do you like?
B. Why do you like pandas?
C. Where are the lions from?
D. Where are the pandas from?

6. I like koalas because they are _____ friendly and very beautiful.

- A. a kind of B. kind of
C. kinds of D. kind

7. Does this lion _____ from Africa or America?

- A. be B. is C. come D. go

8. —What _____ do you like?

—I like penguins.

- A. sports B. subjects C. music D. animals

9. One of them _____ an MP5 player.

- A. have B. has C. are D. there is

10. —Does Susan often play with the cat?

—_____ She likes it very much.

- A. Yes, she is. B. No, she doesn't.
C. Yes, she does. D. No, she isn't.

二、根据句意及首字母完成单词

1. The old man is in d _____. We must save him.

2. The elephant is one of Thailand's s _____.

3. I like koalas b _____ they are cute.

4. Koalas come from A _____.

5. Shanghai is a good p _____ to visit.



三、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

- Why _____ (do) your sister like dogs?
- It's dangerous _____ (play) with a lion.
- We mustn't buy things _____ (make) of ivory.
- Let's go to the park _____ (one).
- Kate wants _____ (see) pandas.
- Let him _____ (play) chess.
- Jack, remember _____ (turn) off the lights when _____ (leave) your room.
—OK, I won't forget, Mom.
- Sue practices _____ (play) the violin at home.
- It's important _____ (follow) the traffic rules on the way to school.
- Koalas _____ (sleep) all day.

四、连词成句或根据图片补全问答

- _____

—Because they are very cute.



- _____

—It's from Africa.



- _____

—It can dance and walk on two legs.



- What animals don't you like?

— _____



- things, we, ivory, buy, the trees, must, not, made of, save, and (.)

五、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

- 这是幸运的象征。

This is a symbol of _____.

- 如果你不小心, 你会面临巨大危险。

If you are not careful, you'll be _____ great _____.

- 人们砍掉了许多树, 所以很多动物正在失去它们的家园。

People _____ many trees, so many animals are losing their homes.

- 当你迷路时, 你可以向警察求助。

You can ask the police for help when you _____.

- 他有一只纸做的小船。

He has a boat _____ paper.



能力提升

六、完形填空

Do you like animals? There are a lot of animals in the 1 in our city. They are pandas, koalas, tigers, lions, dolphins, penguins, elephants and so on(等等). I think dolphins(海豚) are very 2. They are kind of 3. When I'm free, I 4 watching them. They can 5 fast and jump(跳) very high(高). They can 6 with a ball. They can "7" up and "walk" on the water. They are very 8 to people. If you fall into(掉进) the water and 9 swim, they may come up and 10 you. Do you like them?

- A. home B. shop C. library D. zoo
- A. scary B. interesting C. boring D. ugly
- A. smart B. shy C. ugly D. lazy
- A. run B. want C. have D. like
- A. swim B. run C. jump D. walk
- A. live B. play C. go D. speak
- A. stand B. sit C. go D. walk
- A. clever B. friendly C. funny D. cute
- A. can B. can't C. doesn't D. are
- A. help B. visit C. meet D. eat

七、阅读理解

My parents often take me to our city zoo on holidays. I like animals. In the zoo I can see tigers, elephants, monkeys, pandas, bears and many other animals. Some animals are friendly, but some are not. Tigers, bears and some snakes are dangerous. That is why they have to stay in cages(笼子). But I don't think it is good for animals to stay in cages. They should be free. The animals in cages can't be happy. Do you think so?

Tigers usually live in forests and mountains. They can run very fast. They catch(捉) and eat small animals like rabbits and deer, but now they live in small rooms. They have nothing to do every day. So they walk round and round in the cages, and they want to get out. When they are tired, they sleep. I feel sorry for them. I think the most interesting animal is the dolphin. I like watching them swim and jump. They swim fast and they jump very high. They can play with a ball. They can stand up and "walk" on water! They are very



friendly to people. If you fall into the water and can't swim, they may come up to help you.

1. They often go to the _____ on holidays.

A. cinema B. park C. library D. zoo

2. _____ are dangerous.

A. Tigers, monkeys and bears
B. Tigers, monkeys and dolphins
C. Tigers, bears and snakes
D. Tigers, snakes and dolphins

3. _____ catch and eat small animals.

A. Rabbits B. Tigers
C. Monkeys D. Elephants

4. I like dolphins because _____.

A. they're friendly B. they swim fast
C. they jump high D. A, B and C

5. It's _____ for animals to stay in cages.




A. good B. bad
C. interesting D. fun

单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What does Mike like?

A.  B.  C. 

2. Why does John like dogs?

A. They are shy. B. They are smart.
C. They are friendly.

3. What are they talking about?

A. Giraffes. B. Tigers. C. Lions.

4. What can elephants do?

A. They can play music.
B. They can draw well.
C. They can clean the room.

5. Where does the boy want to go today?

A. To the park.
B. To the school.
C. To the zoo.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. What animals does John like?

A. Tigers. B. Monkeys. C. Giraffes.

7. Why does Lucy like pandas?

A. Because they're clever.
B. Because they're cute.
C. Because they're friendly.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. What does Kate think of koalas?

A. They are cute. B. They are clever.
C. They are interesting.

9. When do they want to go to the zoo?

A. On Friday. B. On Saturday.
C. On Sunday.

10. Where is the zoo?

A. It's near the library.
B. It's near the school.
C. It's near the hospital.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

The Zoo	
Where	The zoo is near Lucy's home.
Why	Lucy often goes to the zoo to see 11. _____.
What	She thinks tigers are 12. _____ and monkeys are 13. _____ and cute.
	Her brother thinks elephants are 14. _____.
	Her sister likes 15. _____ because she thinks they are interesting.

二、单项选择

1. —_____ animals do you like?

—I like pandas.

A. What B. How C. Whose D. Why

2. The animals are in danger. We must _____ them.

A. catch B. lose C. save D. make

3. —Where are lions _____?

—South Africa.

A. of B. by C. with D. from

4. The hat is _____ big for me. Do you have a small one?

A. kind B. kind of



- C. a kind of D. kinds of
5. Children like to go to the zoo _____ they like animals.
- A. and B. but C. so D. because
6. Excuse me, I _____. Can you help me?
- A. get lost B. get dressed
- C. get up D. get on
7. Elephants can remember the places _____ food and water.
- A. with B. for C. in D. at
8. I don't like lions because they are _____.
A. cute B. scary
C. clever D. interesting
9. —Let's see the pandas first, dad.
—
A. That's right. B. Good luck.
C. That sounds good. D. Have fun!
10. The Great Wall is the _____ of China.
A. place B. symbol
C. dream D. model

三、完形填空

Do you know pigeons(鸽子)? They are 1 bird. They are usually in white 2 grey. Some people say they are not 3, but they are cute and clever. 4 people keep them as pets. 5 do people say pigeons are clever? Because they can 6 letters from one place 7 another. And they know the 8 home. We can often 9 the pictures of pigeons with olive branches(橄榄枝). We give the name—peace(和平) pigeons to 10. They are the symbol of peace.

1. A. a kind of B. kinds of
C. a kind D. kind
2. A. and B. but C. or D. so
3. A. easy B. beautiful
C. lazy D. healthy
4. A. A lot B. No C. Many D. A little
5. A. Why B. What C. Where D. When
6. A. give B. have C. take D. buy
7. A. of B. with C. to D. for
8. A. river B. way C. street D. road
9. A. look B. see C. watch D. read
10. A. them B. it C. him D. they

四、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

- A: Hi, Henry! Let's go to the zoo this Sunday.
B: Great. 1
A: Pandas.

- B: Why?
A: Because they are cute. 2
B: I like elephants best.
A: Elephants? 3
B: They are from Africa.
A: Well, why do you like them?
B: 4
A: Wow! 5

- A. Where are they from?
B. Because they are symbols of good luck.
C. What animals do you like?
D. Let's see elephants first.
E. What about you?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

Visit Swansea Zoo

Come and see the Indian elephants and the new tigers from America. The bears are waiting to meet you, and the monkeys from China are waiting to throw(扔) things at you. The lovely koalas from Australia are waiting to laugh at you, and the giraffes from Zambia are waiting to look down on you.

Tickets

Grown-ups(成人): \$2.00; Children Over 12: \$1.00;

Children Under 12: Free

Opening time

Mon.—Fri.: 10:00 a. m. ~ 3:00 p. m.

Saturday and Sunday: 9:00 a. m. ~ 4:00 p. m.

Keep the zoo clean! Do not touch, give food to or go near the animals.

1. How many kinds of animals are talked about in the text?
A. Four. B. Five. C. Six. D. Seven.
2. Now Mrs. Smith is in the zoo with her two sons, one is 14 years old, the other is 10. How much are the tickets?
A. \$ 4.00. B. \$ 3.00.
C. \$ 2.00. D. \$ 1.00.
3. Which of the following is the visiting time?
A. 9:30 a. m. Monday. B. 3:30 p. m. Tuesday.
C. 3:00 p. m. Saturday. D. 8:30 a. m. Sunday.
4. From the passage we can guess the animal "giraffe" must be very _____.
A. tall B. long C. strong D. fat



5. Which of the following can we do in the zoo?
A. To get close to the bears.
B. To give some food to the dogs.
C. To touch the monkeys on the heads.
D. To watch the animals outside of the cages.

六、按要求完成句子

1. The boy _____/slɪps/ eight hours a day.
2. We should save the animals in _____/'dem(d)ʒə/.
3. The elephant is one of Thailand's _____/'sɪmbəls/.
4. Don't _____/fə'get/ to take an umbrella with you.
5. We are very _____(友好) to the new student.
6. Every year people _____(砍倒) many trees.
7. I love things _____(make) of wood.
8. Let's do our homework _____(one).
9. _____(not fight) with your classmates, please.
10. Keep _____(quietly)! We are in the library now.

七、连词成句或根据图片补全问答

1. — _____
—Because I think pandas are interesting.
2. — _____
—No, I don't. Because they're scary.
3. love dogs, Scott, because, they are, _____
very cute (.)
4. what animals, he, see, want to, does (?)
5. — _____
—Koalas are from Australia.

八、用方框中动词的适当形式填空,有的需要加助动词或不定式符号

sing, have, look, play, tell

Let me 1 you something about my little dog. He 2 very cute. He 3 small eyes, two big ears, four short legs and a small tail(尾巴). Now it's time for him 4 games. If I say "Please sing a song for us!", then he can sing for us. Listen! He 5 beautifully! But he doesn't sing in English or Chinese. When he sings, nobody can understand him.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

九、任务型阅读

阅读短文,根据要求完成文后题目。

My name's Jodie King. I'm 12 years old. I'm from the United Kingdom. Now I live in China. I'm a student of Guangming Middle School. I go to school from Monday to Friday. On Saturday and Sunday we have no classes. On Saturday I usually do my homework. On Sunday I often go to the zoo with my parents. I like elephants very much because they're clever. But (A) 我爸爸喜欢熊猫. He thinks they're beautiful and kind. My mother likes giraffes. (B) She thinks they're cute and interesting. So we usually stay in the zoo the whole (整个的) day and watch them.

We often take a lot of photos. I think (C) they are our good friends.

1. How old is Jodie?

2. Jodie goes to school _____ Monday _____ Friday.

3. 请把(A)处的画线句子译成英语。

4. 请把(B)处画线句子译成汉语。

5. (C)处画线单词 they 指代的是 _____。

十、书面表达

假如你有一只宠物小猫,它非常讨人喜欢。请根据下表提示,把它介绍给你的新西兰的好朋友 Jim。

要求:语句通顺,60 词左右,开头已给出,不计入总词数。

Name	Mimi
Appearance(外表特征)	1. Black and white 2. Two big eyes
Personality(性格特点)	1. Smart and interesting 2. Lazy
Favorite food	Fish
Hobby	Play with a ball

I have a cat. Its name is _____

Unit 6

I'm watching TV.

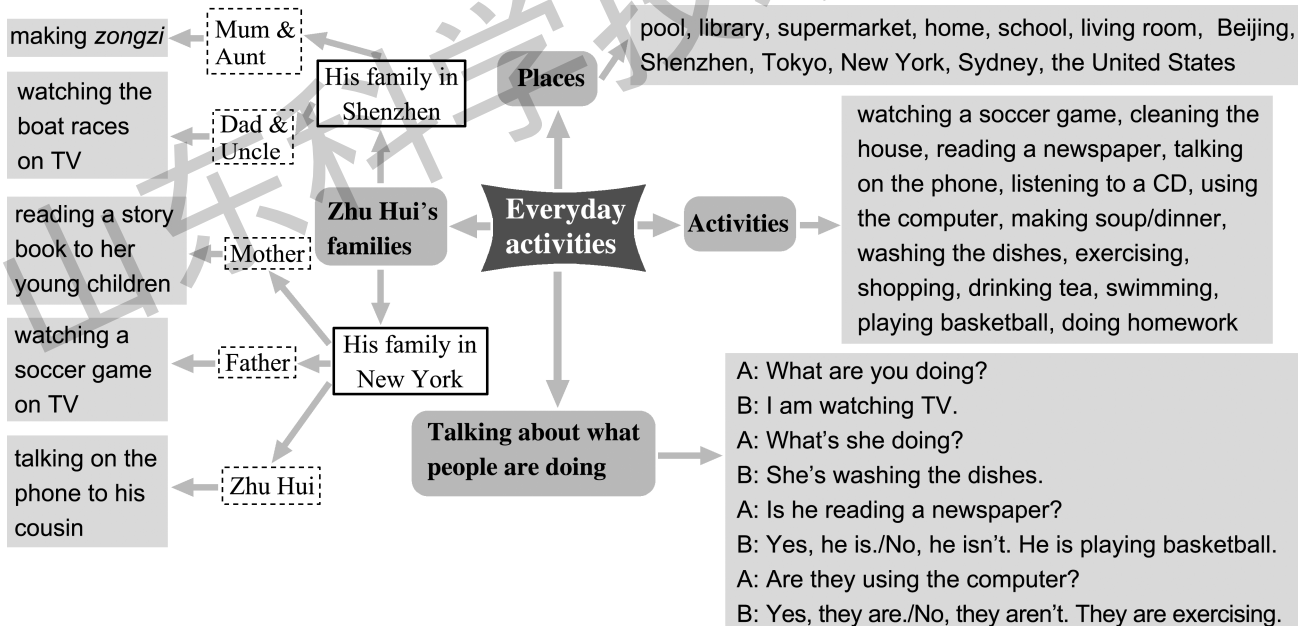
单元概要

本单元的中心话题是“Talk about what people are doing”，谈论家人的日常活动情况，谈论同一时间人们正在做的不同活动；通过“打电话”的情境体验，感悟、理解、学习现在进行时的一般疑问句、否定句及特殊疑问句等语言结构，区分一般现在时和现在进行时在结构与用法上的差异，以及现在分词的构成规律。语篇中有中国留学生朱辉的故事，也介绍了中国的传统节日——端午节，展现了中西方不同的文化习俗，表达了朱辉“每逢佳节倍思亲”的思乡之情。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式描述家人在某一时刻的日常活动情况；能运用现在进行时的一般疑问句、否定句及特殊疑问句等目标语言结构，准确描述同一时间在不同地域人们正在做的不同活动。通过阅读语篇中中国留学生朱辉的故事，弘扬民族传统文化，领略中西方不同的文化习俗，体会朋友、家人之间的感情，学会适切表达情感。



文化探索

“望子成龙，望女成凤”是每位父母的愿望，可往往事与愿违。史密斯先生就是如此。

Mr. Smith goes to the town(城镇) to see his son, Tom. Tom is studying music in a school there. He tells his father he does well and his father is very happy. That evening Mr. Smith buys two tickets(票) for a concert(音乐会). They get there early after dinner. They're sitting in the hall(大厅) and listening to them playing.

The music is beautiful and Mr. Smith enjoys(喜爱) it very much. But he finds his son doesn't like it



at all. Mr. Smith wants to know something about Tom. So he asks, “Do you know the music?” “Yeah,” answers Tom. “And what’s the musician playing now?” Mr. Smith asks. Tom doesn’t know how to answer it. He thinks hard and then says, “... the piano.”

Questions:

Does Mr. Smith really know his son very well? What kind of parents do you want to live with? Why?

Section A



重点突破

1. She is exercising now. 她正在锻炼。

【感知】(1) I am reading a newspaper.

(2) She exercises every morning.

(3) He is using the computer now.

【思考】现在进行时表示现在正在进行的动作，结构为“主语+be+动词-ing形式”。be动词和动词-ing形式两者缺一不可。现在进行时态强调说话时动作正在进行。

【运用】

(1) The boy _____ (run) with his father now.

(2) Look! His sister _____ (read) a book.

(3) It’s seven o’clock now. My brother and I _____ (talk) on the phone.

2. What’s he waiting for? 他在等什么?

【感知】(1) Tom! Someone is waiting for you.

(2) Please wait a minute.

(3) Who is your mother waiting for?

【思考】wait为不及物动词，其后跟宾语时，要加介词_____，组成短语动词_____ sb./sth.；表示“迫不及待做某事”，也可以用can’t wait to do sth.。

【运用】

(1) —Who _____ you _____?
你在等谁呢?

—I’m _____ my classmates. 我在等同学。

(2) He is waiting _____ the bus at the bus station now.

- A. at B. for
C. in D. on

(3) Linda often _____ in the pool. She is good at _____. Look, she _____ now. (swim)

3. This is Jenny (speaking). 我是珍妮。

【感知】(1) —Hello, this is Kate.

—Hi, this is John speaking.

(2) —Who’s that?

—This is Ms. Black.

(3) —Hello, is Laura in?

—Hello, this is Laura speaking.

【思考】这是打电话交际用语。电话接通后，介绍自己用_____；不能说“I am...”；如果询问对方，则要用_____或“Who’s that speaking?”，不能用“Who are you?”。要表示找某人通话，则要用“May I speak to...?”；询问某人是否在家用“Is... in?”；让某人稍等可以说“Hold on, please.”或“Wait a minute.”。

【运用】

(1) —Hello, may I speak to John?

- A. Who are you?
B. What’s wrong?
C. This is John speaking.
D. I am John.

(2) —Who’s that speaking?

- A. That is Tom.
B. This is Jenny speaking.
C. I’m Mike.
D. She is Maria.

(3) —
—Hold on, please. He is coming now.

- A. Are you Mr. Miller?
B. Excuse me, can you help me?
C. Hello, may I speak to Mrs. Black?
D. I’m sorry to trouble you.

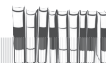
4. 辨析 look, see, watch, read

【感知】(1) Look! Can you see some apples on the tree?

(2) He likes watching TV at home.

(3) I often go to the library to read books there.

【思考】_____意为“看见”，强调看的结果，如：see a film, see a doctor. 另外，see还有“看望，



明白”的意思；_____意为“看”，强调看的动作，常用于 look at, look after, 也可以用作系动词，表示“看起来、看上去”等；_____意为“看电视、比赛等”，指有目的地集中注意力地看；_____意为“看书、看报”，表示阅读。

【运用】

(1) 用表示“看、读”的动词正确形式填空。

- ① I want to _____ the film with you.
- ② _____! There is a kite flying in the sky.
- ③ _____ TV too much is bad for your health.
- ④ Don't _____ books in the sun.

(2) —Why are they so excited?

—They are _____ the football match of the World Cup.

- A. looking B. watching
C. seeing D. reading

(3) His mother with her children _____ (watch) TV at home now.



基础强化

一、填写动词的现在分词

A. 一般在动词词尾直接加-ing, 如: clean—cleaning
wear _____ meet _____
look _____ listen _____

B. 以不发音的字母 e 结尾的动词, 把 e 去掉, 再加-ing, 如: dance—dancing
come _____ have _____
skate _____ make _____

C. 以重读闭音节结尾, 词尾只有一个辅音字母的动词, 需要双写最后一个辅音字母, 再加-ing, 如:
run—running
swim _____ put _____
shop _____ forget _____

D. 以 ie 结尾的动词, 把 ie 变成 y 再加-ing, 如:
lie—lying
die—_____

二、单项选择

1. Han Mei _____ her homework every day at home.
A. do B. does
C. is doing D. to do
2. —_____ English every morning?
—Yes, but now I _____ Chinese.

- A. Are you reading; read
B. Do you read; read
C. Do you read; am reading
D. Are you reading; an reading

3. —Is your brother doing his homework?

- _____
A. Yes, he does. B. Yes, he is.
C. No, he doesn't. D. No, he is.

4. Linda often _____ her homework in the evening but now she _____ TV.

- A. does; is watching
B. is doing; watches
C. is doing; is watching
D. does; watches

5. —_____ are they doing?

- They're _____.
A. What; run B. What; running
C. Who; running D. Who; run

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. It is seven o'clock. The Blacks _____ (eat) some cakes.
2. Listen, some boys _____ (play) soccer on the playground.
3. Look! Who _____ (clean) the blackboard?
4. —Don't make any noise. Your mother _____ (sleep) in the room.
—Sorry, I won't.
5. Tony is good at _____ stories. He wants to join a story _____ club. We are interested in his stories. Listen! He _____ stories for us now. (tell)

四、连词成句

1. is, the phone, look, on, David, talking (!)

2. computer games, are, playing, the boys (?)

3. listen, is, a, song, Li Ying, singing, beautiful (.)

4. for dinner, join, you, to, me, do, want (?)

5. after, cleans, Gina, the desk, dinner, usually (.)

五、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

A: What can I do for you, Sir?

B: 1 _____

A: For yourself? These are all for young people,



Section B



重点突破

1. Is Zhu Hui also watching *the races* and eating *zongzi*? 朱辉也看比赛和吃粽子吗?

【感知】(1) He won *the 100-meter race* and was happy.

(2) They *have a volleyball game* this term.

(3) On Dragon Boat Festival, we like watching *boat races* and eating *zongzi*.

【思考】*race* 为可数名词,意为“竞赛”,指赛跑、速度方面的比赛,如赛车、赛马等;_____指决定胜负的游戏,通常有一套规则,凡参加者均需遵守,多用于美式英语,英式英语则用 *match*,此时 *game* 与 *match* 可以互换。

【运用】

(1) Many of the villagers take part in the dragon boat _____ at 9:00 a. m. in the morning.

A. games B. races C. competitions

(2) We will have a soccer _____ against Class 2.

A. game B. race C. ball

(3) He hopes to take part in the _____ in the sports meeting.

A. 800 meter race B. 800-meter race

C. 800 meters game D. 800-meters race

2. But there isn't Dragon Boat Festival in the U. S. , so it's like any other night for Zhu Hui and his host family. 但是美国没有龙舟节,所以对于朱辉和他的寄宿家庭来说这一晚没有什么不同。

【感知】(1) Do you have *any friends* here?

(2) *Would you like* some bananas?

(3) He is taller than *any other boy* in his class.

【思考】*any* 意为“一些”,常用于_____ (肯定/否定)句或疑问句中,而肯定句中用 *some*。当表示建议、请求或希望得到肯定回答时, *some* 可用于疑问句中,而不用 *any*。 *any* 用于肯定句中表示“任何一个,任意一个”;_____ 意为“又一个(个);另一(个)”;_____ 意为“两者中的另一个”。

【运用】

(1) Lin Tao has two friends. One is from Canada,

and _____ is from Australia.

A. the others

B. others

C. another

D. the other

(2) 用 *any* 或 *some*。

① I have _____ good friends in my class.

② Is there _____ water in the bottle?

(3) Sarah has read lots of stories by American writers. Now she would like to read _____ stories by writers from _____ countries.

A. some; any

B. other; some

C. some; other

D. other; other

3. Zhu Hui misses his family and wishes to have his mom's delicious *zongzi*. 朱辉想念他的家人,希望吃到他妈妈做的美味的粽子。

【感知】(1) I *miss my grandma* very much.

(2) Don't *miss the train*.

(3) My father *wishes me to be a teacher*.

【思考】“怀念,想念”是_____,其第三人称单数形式为_____. 它还可以用作动词,意思是“错过”。而动词“希望,祝愿”为_____,其第三人称单数形式为_____. 它也可以用作名词,意思是“祝福,愿望”。

【运用】

(1) She isn't at home. So she _____ her son very much.

A. wants

B. helps

C. likes

D. misses

(2) The Chinese ping-pong players will join in the match. Let's _____ them success.

A. wish

B. to wish

C. hope

D. to hope

4. 辨析 *talk to*, *talk with*, *talk about*

【感知】(1) Mr. Smith *is talking to the students*.

(2) What *are you talking about*?

(3) Peter and Tom *are talking with each other*.

【思考】_____ 意为“和……讲话(一方在讲,另一方在听)”;_____ 意为“和……讲话(强调两者都在说)”;_____ 意为“谈论某人或者某事”; *tell* 意为“侧重于讲述、告诉”,如:讲故事_____. _____ 后面加语言;_____ 后面强调说的内容。

【运用】

(1) Look! The boy _____ (talk) with his mom.

(2) “He often _____ us stories,” the man



_____.

- A. says; talks B. tells; says
C. telling; says D. tells; talk

(3) 让我们讨论一下这幅图画吧。

Let's _____ the picture.



基础强化

一、单项选择

- Please be quiet, your grandfather _____.
A. sleep B. sleeps
C. is sleeping D. are sleeping
- In _____ photo, a boy is playing soccer.
A. two B. second
C. the two D. the second
- Look! Mary and her brother _____ there.
A. are talking over B. is talking over
C. are talking to D. are talking about
- I _____ my room every day. But now I _____.
A. clean; am reading B. clean; read
C. cleaning; read D. am cleaning; reading
- In the picture you can see a boy swimming. His father _____.
A. sees B. is looking
C. is look at D. is watching
- It's 7 o'clock. Tom _____ dinner at home.
A. is having B. have
C. has D. having
- We _____ any Chinese classes on Thursdays. And we _____ an English class now.
A. aren't having; are having
B. don't have; have
C. don't have; are having
D. aren't having; don't have
- Let's go to the park, Lily.
—_____ Shall we go now?
A. Sorry, I can't. B. Sure.
C. It's boring. D. Thanks.
- Ling Ming, are you listening or writing?
—_____
A. Yes, I am.
B. No, I am not writing.
C. I'm listening.
D. I'm listening and writing.

10. —What are you doing?

—_____ It is too dirty.

- A. I'm doing my homework.
B. I'm playing computer games.
C. I'm cleaning the room.
D. I'm writing.

二、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

- The _____ (man) are playing cards under the tree in the park.
- Listen! Lisa _____ (sing) in the next class-room. She sings very well.
- Look! Who _____ (clean) the blackboard?
- We want _____ (buy) some books.
- Can you _____ (look) after the child, Ann?
- It is seven o'clock. They _____ (eat) some cakes.
- _____ (do) he often get up early?
—Yes, he does. He _____ (read) English now.
- Let's _____ (have) some salad.
—Good idea. I like it very much.
- Listen, some boys _____ (talk) in the room.
- Look! Liu Ming _____ (watch) the boat races with his parents.

三、根据图示补全问句或答语

1. —What are you doing now?

—_____



2. —_____

—Yes, I am cooking with mom.



3. —What's Gina doing?

—_____



4. —_____

—Yes, he is. My grandpa likes reading.



5. —I'm washing my clothes. What about you?
—_____



四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

1. 我弟弟现在没有玩游戏, 他正在做作业。

My brother _____ games and he _____ his homework now.

2. —艾丽斯正在跳舞吗? —是的, 她正在跳舞。

—_____ Alice _____?

—Yes, _____.



3. ——她正在做什么? ——她正在洗衣服。

—— she _____?

—She _____ her _____.

4. ——他们正在使用电脑吗?

——不,他们正在锻炼。

—— they _____ the computer?

—No, they _____.



能力提升

五、完形填空

It's a summer afternoon in the city of Jinan. The weather is sunny and 1. 2 are staying at home. Mr. Green is 3 a storybook on the sofa. Mrs. Green is 4. What is Bill doing? He's doing his homework 5. Bill's parents 6 TV in the living room now. Bill's sister, Mary, isn't 7. She's swimming in the lake with her friends. They don't like hot weather, 8 they can do 9 to keep it away. The radio says it will be cool later on and they are all 10 to hear that. They hope they can enjoy themselves then.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. cold | B. hot |
| C. rainy | D. cloudy |
| 2. A. Mr. Green | B. Mrs. Green |
| C. The Green | D. The Greens |
| 3. A. reading | B. looking |
| C. seeing | D. looking at |
| 4. A. doing wash | B. washing clothes |
| C. do washing | D. do many washing |
| 5. A. under the bed | B. in his study |
| C. on the table | D. in the kitchen |
| 6. A. is watching | B. watch |
| C. watching | D. are watching |
| 7. A. on | B. in |
| C. away | D. stay at home |
| 8. A. and | B. because |
| C. but | D. so |
| 9. A. something | B. but |
| C. nothing | D. anything |
| 10. A. sad | B. sorry |
| C. angry | D. happy |

六、阅读理解

While I was waiting to enter university, I saw

an advertisement in the local newspaper. A teacher is wanted in a school. I wanted to collect some money for my tuition(学费), and I wanted to do something useful, so I went to apply for this job. I was a little nervous, low in spirit and not confident while interviewing(面试), but at last I made it. It's not easy for me to give the students lessons. I was unhappy now. I should have to divide(分配) the class into three groups and teach them in turn at different levels, and I was dismayed at the thought of teaching algebra(代数) and geometry(几何学), because I was not good at the two subjects at school. And the worst thing was that on Saturday afternoon I had to take the students to play cricket(板球), but at that time my friends would be enjoying themselves. I should find another job, I thought to myself.

- The writer applied for the job because _____.
 - he wanted to get some experience in teaching
 - he had a good mind to move to another place
 - he needed money and wanted to do something useful
 - he wanted to get a job
- Why was the writer unhappy?
 - Because he was not good at teaching algebra and geometry.
 - Because he had to teach three different levels.
 - Because he couldn't play with his friends on Saturday afternoon.
 - All of the above. (以上全是)
- The underlined word "dismayed" means _____.
 - 沮丧的
 - 高兴的
 - 生气的
 - 难过的
- How did he feel when he was interviewed?
 - Nervous.
 - Not confident.
 - Low in spirit.
 - All of the above.
- What can we know from the story?
 - The writer would leave here.
 - The writer would work here until he enters university.
 - The writer had no choice but to work here.
 - He would be glad to stay here.



单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What's your favorite food?



2. What is Tom doing?



3. What time is it in Jinan?

- A. It's eight o'clock. B. It's nine o'clock.
C. It's ten o'clock.

4. What is Mary doing?

- A. She's listening to a CD.
B. She's reading books.
C. She's washing her clothes.

5. Where is Lily?

- A. At the library. B. At school.
C. At the supermarket.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. Do they have any tomatoes at home?

- A. Yes, they do. B. No, they don't.
C. We don't know.

7. What is Linda doing?

- A. She is swimming. B. She is shopping.
C. She is helping her father pick apples.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. When is the girl's father's birthday?

- A. On Monday. B. On Sunday.
C. On Saturday.

9. Where is the party going to be?

- A. At the restaurant. B. At home.
C. At the shop.

10. What time is the party going to start?

- A. At seven o'clock.

B. At six o'clock.

C. At five o'clock.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

How old Tara is	11. _____ years old.
What Mrs. Green buys	Apples, watermelons, 12. _____, strawberries and oranges.
How many girls come	13. _____.
What Mr. and Mrs. Green make	Many kinds of 14. _____.
When the party is	At 15. _____ p. m.

二、单项选择

1. —Cindy, dinner is ready. Where is Tom?

—He _____ his homework in his room.

- A. does B. did
C. is doing D. doing

2. —Lily, are you playing games or reading a book?

—_____ I enjoy reading.

- A. Playing games. B. Reading a book.
C. Yes, I am. D. No, I'm not.

3. My uncle is a doctor. He sometimes has to work _____ night.

- A. in B. at C. on D. for

4. —Don't be too strict with her. She is _____ a young child.

—You're right.

- A. so B. too C. just D. either

5. —Do you want to go shopping with me, Joe?

—_____

- A. See you then. B. You're welcome.
C. Sure. D. Thanks.

6. —_____ is it from here to the airport?

—About forty kilometers.

- A. How much B. How long
C. How many D. How far

7. —Bob, don't _____ the bus, or you may wait for a long time.

—OK, mom.

- A. miss B. show C. stop D. order



8. —How many _____ does the U.S. have, Mike?
—Fifty.

A. states B. villages C. flags D. stars

9. Look! Lily and Lucy _____ photos.

A. take B. is taking
C. taking D. are taking

10. —Victor, I wish my parents _____ a happy life.

—I hope so.

A. have B. to have C. has D. having

三、完形填空

A science teacher wants to teach his students a special lesson. He takes a large bottle and 1 several large stones in it. He then asks the students, "Is the bottle full(满的) now?"

They all answer, "Yes!"

The teacher then takes some small rocks(石子) and puts them into the 2. The small rocks go into the spaces(空间) between the big stones. He then asks, "Is it full?"

This time 3 students give no answer, but most answer, "Yes!"

The teacher then starts to pour some 4 into the bottle. The sand fills up the spaces between the small rocks. For the 5 time, the teacher asks, "Is it full?"

Now most of the students are thinking, but 6, some say, "Yes!"

Then the teacher pours a cup of water into the bottle and asks, "What's the 7 of this lesson?"

One student answers, "No matter how 8 you are, you can always find time to do more things."

"No," says the teacher. "The point is that 9 you don't put the big rocks in first, you'll never get them in. The big rocks are the 10 things in your life. If you fill your life with small things—as shown by the small rocks, the sand and the water—you'll never have the time for the important things."

1. A. keeps B. puts C. gets D. gives
2. A. mouth B. cup C. bottle D. room
3. A. some B. few C. any D. many
4. A. water B. stones C. rocks D. sand
5. A. first B. second C. third D. fourth
6. A. ever B. still C. even D. never

7. A. answer B. question
C. problem D. point

8. A. busy B. sleepy C. great D. popular

9. A. when B. until C. because D. if

10. A. strong B. important
C. friendly D. difficult

四、阅读理解

For many people, baseball is a game for fathers and sons. Fathers and sons have been playing catch with each other on lawns(草坪) for generations in the US. A father's favorite team becomes his son's. Grandfathers talk to their grandsons about games played long ago.

Many American kids collect baseball cards. The cards have pictures of their favorite players on them. In school, friends exchange(交换) baseball cards and talk about them.

Baseball players are known as "the boys of summer" because the sport is most often played in summer. You don't need to be a certain size or shape to play baseball. You don't have to be tall like a basketball player or strong like an American football player. You just need to want to have fun.

Baseball is not as fast-paced as basketball. When you go to see a game, there's time to relax, talk and get to know other people.

Baseball may not be the most popular sport in the US, but it is the most traditional. It's not just a game any more, but a key part of American culture, like apple pie.

1. What is a game for fathers and sons in the US?
A. Basketball. B. Football.
C. Volleyball. D. Baseball.
2. Baseball players are called "the boys of summer" because they _____.
A. usually play the games in summer
B. are full of energy like summer
C. are as hot as summer
D. often sweat in summer
3. What is the meaning of the underlined word "fast-paced"?
A. 短暂的 B. 跑得快的
C. 快节奏的 D. 令人兴奋的
4. The last paragraph tells us that _____.
A. baseball is the most popular sport in the U. S.
B. baseball is an important part of American culture



- C. baseball is only a game for Americans
D. American baseball players are like apple pies
5. What's the best title of the passage?
- A. A game for fathers and sons
B. How to play baseball
C. The most popular sports in the U. S.
D. Baseball, a game for the boys of summer
- 五、用方框中动词的适当形式填空,有的需要加助动词或不定式符号

play, read, sing, eat, swim

Look! There are many people in the park. Some boys 1 in the river. Some boys 2 soccer there. Two girls 3 an interesting book under a big tree. A boy 4 with his parents at a table. Wow! There are some birds in the tree. What are they doing? They 5 loudly. How happy they are!

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

六、按要求完成句子

1. My father is reading a _____ /'nju:zpeɪpə/.
2. He is taller than _____ (任何其他) boy in his class.
3. Listen! The children are singing and _____ (dance) happily in the classroom.
4. Linda, can you help _____ (clean) the living room.
5. Be quiet, my mom _____ (sleep).

七、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. A: What is he doing?

B: _____

2. Bob, every day, make dinner (.)

3. Jenny, look, clean the house (!)

4. Jack, live with, in New York, an American family, now (.)

5. A: _____ (what)

B: We are watching an action movie.

八、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

After dinner, Lisa's cousins, Anna and Jenny, are still at her house. Lisa is cleaning the room. (A) Anna is watching an interesting TV show. Jenny is reading newspapers. She is reading

the information(信息) about movies. She wants to go to the movies. (B) 现在她正和 Lisa 和 Anna 谈论这个话题(topic).

Jenny: Girls, what do you want to do tonight?

Anna: Do you like going to the movies?

Jenny: Yes, I often go to the movies.

Lisa: Well, let's go to the movies.

Jenny: There is a good movie today. It's *A strong Boy*.

Lisa: Great. It's a very successful movie.

Anna: What time will it begin?

Jenny: It begins at eight o'clock.

Anna: It's 7:00 p. m. now. We can catch(赶上) it. Let's go.

Jenny and Lisa: OK!

1. 将(A)处画线句子译成汉语。

2. 将(B)处画线句子译成英语。

3. Anna, Lisa and Jenny are _____.

- A. sisters B. cousins
C. friends D. pen pals

4. They have _____ to get to the movies.

- A. thirty minutes B. forty minutes
C. one hour D. two hours

5. Where are Anna and Jenny now?

九、书面表达

根据图片内容, 展开想象, 用英语描述一下周六上午 10 点图中的人正在做什么。60 词左右。



期中测试

(考试时间 100 分钟, 满分 120 分)

第 I 卷(选择题 共 75 分)

一、听力测试(15 分)

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What can he do?



2. What time does he usually have the first class?



3. How does he go to Paris?



4. What does he like?



5. What does his mother usually do?



(二)在录音中,你将听到一段对话及五个问题。请根据对话内容及问题选择正确答案。(对话及问题读两遍)。

6. A. A music club. B. A swimming club.
C. A sports club.
7. A. Yes, he can. B. No, he can't.
C. We don't know.
8. A. 20 kilometers. B. 12 kilometers.
C. 30 kilometers.
9. A. At 8:00 a. m. B. At 8:30 a. m.
C. At 8:30 p. m.
10. A. By bike. B. On foot. C. By bus.

(三)在录音中,你将听到一篇短文及五个问题。请根据短文内容及问题选择正确答案。(短文及问题读两遍)

11. A. 6:10. B. 8:00. C. 12:00.
12. A. Some beef and soup.
B. Some milk and hamburgers.
C. Two eggs.
13. A. He often takes the subway.
B. He often takes a bus.
C. He often walks.
14. A. 4. B. 2. C. 3.
15. A. He usually watches TV.
B. He usually does some housework.
C. He usually takes a walk.

二、单项选择(15 分)

从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中,选出一个最佳答案。

16. —What can you do?
—I can play _____ piano.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
17. I don't like winter _____ there's too much snow and ice.
A. so B. but C. and D. because
18. It's twelve o'clock. Mary's family _____ their dinner.
A. eat B. are eating
C. eating D. eats
19. Jim can swim very well. He _____ in the river now.
A. swims B. swimming
C. is swimming D. are swimming
20. Listen! They _____ about Harry Potter.
Let's join them.
A. are talking B. talking
C. talk D. talks
21. You must show your _____ if you buy a train ticket(车票) now.
A. ID card B. mail C. order D. menu



22. —Mom, the cake tastes good. I'd like _____ one.

—OK. Here you are.

- A. some B. much
C. another D. many

23. —Jim, you speak English very well.

—_____

- A. You are right. B. Thank you.
C. Don't worry. D. Don't say that.

24. —I'm going to the beach tomorrow.

—_____

- A. Have a good time!
B. I'm sorry to hear that!
C. That's too bad!
D. You're welcome!

25. —Do you like pandas?

—Yes. I think they're _____.

- A. ugly B. cute C. terrible D. scary

26. The dolphin is _____ cute.

- A. little B. a kind of
C. kind of D. kinds of

27. She likes going to the movies with her friends and _____ sports.

- A. playing B. play
C. plays D. to play

28. Tom is good at language. He speaks Chinese _____.

- A. well B. good C. nice D. great

29. —What's your mother doing?

—She is _____.

- A. watching TV B. at work
C. a nurse D. in hospital

30. —_____ do you want to see the pandas?

—Because they are cute.

- A. What B. Why C. Who D. Where

三、完形填空(10分)

阅读短文,从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中,选出一个能填入文章中相应空白处的最佳答案。

Pandas are treasure(宝) of China. They are very 31. Many people like them very much. Most of them live in Sichuan, China. They 32 white hair, but their shoulders, legs, ears and eyes are 33. Pandas are usually heavy, but they can climb trees like any 34 animal.

Pandas enjoy 35 leaves(树叶). Lots of kinds of leaves are their food. Their 36 food is bamboo leaves. But long long ago, pandas liked to eat meat. It takes them a lot of 37 to have food every day. When they are full(吃饱), they have to relax many hours every day.

Today, there 38 many pandas in the world. 39 many people cut down too many bamboo trees and pandas cannot find enough(足够的) food.

I think we must 40 them together.

31. A. funny B. short
C. lovely D. lazy
32. A. are B. have
C. has D. grow
33. A. black B. white
C. long D. curly
34. A. an B. one
C. other D. another
35. A. walking B. jumping
C. sleeping D. eating
36. A. best B. favorite
C. real D. special
37. A. water B. days
C. time D. money
38. A. aren't B. are
C. isn't D. is
39. A. So B. And
C. But D. Because
40. A. like B. visit
C. see D. save

四、补全对话(5分)

阅读对话,从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中,选出一个最佳答案完成对话。

Bill: Hi, Alan. 41

Alan: I'm doing my homework, Bill.

Bill: Don't you finish it at school?

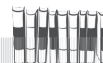
Alan: I'm so busy. 42

Bill: Really? But I finish it at 4:00 this afternoon.

Alan: 43

Bill: Yes, I do. We can go to the playground(操场) at 6:00.

Alan: Well, wait me for a minute. I have to finish my homework first.



Bill: Oh, great. 44

Alan: About 20 minutes.

Bill: OK, waiting for you.

Alan: 45

41. A. When are you free?
B. Are you watching TV?
C. What is he doing?
D. What are you doing?
42. A. I have lunch at 12:00.
B. I have too much homework to do.
C. Do you have homework?
D. I don't have homework.
43. A. Do you want to play soccer?
B. What are you doing?
C. When do you go to play soccer?
D. Are you playing soccer?
44. A. How far is it?
B. How long does it take?
C. How many times does it take?
D. How much is it?
45. A. Here you are.
B. OK, see you.
C. Thank you.
D. You are welcome.

五、阅读理解(30分)

阅读下列短文,然后从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出一个能回答所提问题或完成所给句子的最佳答案。

A

There is an elephant and a monkey.

They're friends, but one day they want to know who is stronger(更强壮). One of them says, "Who can get apples over there, who is stronger."

There's a river over there. Monkey says, "I can't swim." Elephant says, "I can swim. Please sit on my back." They go across the river. The apple trees are very high. The elephant can't reach(够着) the apples. The monkey climbs(爬) up the tree and gets many apples.

Now they know they should help each other.

46. The elephant and the monkey want to know who _____.
A. is smarter B. is higher
C. can swim D. is stronger

47. _____ can't swim.

- A. The elephant B. The monkey
C. The big animals D. The small animals

48. _____ can't reach the apples.

- A. The elephant B. The monkey
C. The high animals D. The short animals

49. At last the monkey goes across the river with the help of _____.

- A. the elephant B. the monkey
C. an animal D. a boat

50. From the story, we should _____.

- A. learn from the elephant
B. learn from the monkey
C. help the animals
D. help each other

B

Welcome to the Zoo!

Opening	Fees
Monday to Friday	Adults(成人): \$ 8.00
10:00 a. m. ~6:00 p. m.	15~18: \$ 6.00
Saturday to Sunday	8~14: \$ 3.00
8:00 a. m. ~8:00 p. m.	Under 8: free(免费)

51. On Sunday, the zoo opens at _____.

- A. 10:00 in the morning
B. 8:00 in the morning
C. 8:00 in the afternoon
D. 6:00 in the afternoon

52. The zoo opens _____ days a week.

- A. two B. five C. seven D. eight

53. If you are 13 years old, and you want to go to the zoo, you should pay _____.

- A. \$ 3 B. \$ 6 C. \$ 8 D. \$ 10

54. Kate is 12, and her little sister is 6. If they go to the zoo, they should pay ____.

- A. \$ 8 B. \$ 6 C. \$ 3 D. \$ 1

55. The zoo closes at _____ on Wednesday.

- A. 10:00 a. m. B. 6:00 a. m.
C. 6:00 p. m. D. 8:00 p. m.

C

Baboons(狒狒) live in Africa. They are like monkeys. Most people think daddy baboons don't know their babies. But scientists(科学家) find that daddy baboons know how to help their babies.



The daddy baboons are smart.

Joan Silk is a scientist. She studies the baboons for 3 years. She says the daddy baboons are happy to see their babies. They have big teeth to help the babies to eat hard things. Mother baboons are small. And they live in a place. When a mother baboon gives birth(分娩), she often has only one baby. Baby baboons have fur. They are very cute.

During the day, they eat things. At night, they sleep in the trees. Most children like baboons because they look like the man.

56. Where do baboons live?

- A. In Africa. B. In America.
C. In Canada. D. In China.

57. How are daddy baboons?

- A. They are shy.
B. They are beautiful.
C. They are smart.
D. They are interesting.

58. The underlined word “hard” means _____ in Chinese.

- A. 困难的 B. 柔软的
C. 坚硬的 D. 华丽的

59. The mother baboon usually has _____ baby baboon(s) when she gives birth.

- A. one B. two C. three D. four

60. Which of the following is TRUE?

- A. Baboons are small monkeys.
B. Baby baboons are very cute.
C. Daddy baboons don't know how to help their babies.
D. Mother baboons don't know how to help their babies.

第Ⅱ卷(非选择题 共45分)

六、选词填空(10分)

A. 阅读短文,从方框中选择适当的单词填空(每词限用一次)。

save, forget, lost, danger, cut down

Hello, we are students from Thailand, and we want to save elephants. Elephants are smart animals. People say that “elephants never 61”. Elephants can walk for a long time and never get

62. But elephants are in great 63. People 64 many trees, and elephants are losing their homes now. So something must be done to 65 the elephants.

61. _____ 62. _____ 63. _____

64. _____ 65. _____

B. 阅读短文,从方框中选出适当的动词,并用其适当形式填空。有的需要加助动词或不定式符号。

sing, have, look, play, tell

Let me 66 you something about my little dog. He 67 very cute. He 68 small eyes (眼睛), two big ears(耳朵), four short legs and a small tail(尾巴). Now it's time for him 69 games. If I say “Please sing a song for us!” then he can sing for us. Listen! He 70 beautifully! But he doesn't sing in English or Chinese. When he sings, nobody can understand him.

66. _____ 67. _____ 68. _____

69. _____ 70. _____

七、连词成句或根据提示词补全问答(5分)

71. —How do you go to school?

_____ (by bus)

72. —_____ (get home)

—It's about twenty minutes.

73. goes to work, Miss Brown, on foot, usually (.)

74. cross, the farmer, a river, every day (.)

75. dream, it is, to have, Jim's, a new bike (.)

八、完成句子(5分)

根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词。

76. 你想参加什么样的俱乐部?

_____ do you want to join?

77. 吃早餐是多么有趣的时间啊!

_____ a fun time _____ have breakfast!

78. 我觉得我在家的约束太多了。

I think I have _____ rules in my home.

79. 我的表妹喜欢放学后和她的朋友一起玩耍。

My cousin likes playing _____ her friends _____ school.



80. 看! Tom 在和 Mike 合影呢!

Look! Tom _____ photos with Mike.

九、任务型阅读(10 分)

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

Dear Linda,

Thank you for your last letter. You ask me about New Year's Day in China.

Let me tell you about it.

New Year's Day is the most important day in China. We call it Spring Festival, too.

Before New Year's Day, families usually clean their house. Children really like New Year's Day, because they can wear new clothes and get red pocket money(压岁钱) from their grandparents, parents, uncles or aunts.

On the first day of New Year's Day, our parents get up very early and make dumplings. They often put coins(硬币) in some dumplings. If you eat the dumplings with a coin in it, you can have good luck(运气) in the coming new year.

After breakfast, we do lots of things. We play cards, and visit relatives(亲戚) and friends. In some places people like to set off firecrackers(鞭炮). It's very interesting.

During(在……期间) New Year's Day, families get together and have a happy time.

Yours,

Li Mei

81. This letter is _____ Li Mei _____ Linda.

82. We call New Year's Day _____, too.

83. Why do children like New Year's Day?

84. 把短文中画线的句子译成汉语。

85. On the first day of New Year's Day, what do people do after breakfast?

十、书面表达(15 分)

假如你是 Sarah, Peter 是你的英国网友。他最近发给你一封电子邮件, 询问你的个人情况。请根据以下提示, 给他回一封电子邮件。

内容包括:

1. 你的爱好和特长;
2. 你的日常生活习惯(至少两点);
3. 你的主要上学方式以及原因;
4. 你对动物的看法;
5. 这些天你正在做的事(一件即可)。

要求:

1. 70 词左右;
2. 书写工整、规范。

Dear Peter,

Thanks for your e-mail. I am very happy to tell you something about myself.

Yours,
Sarah

Unit 7

It's raining!

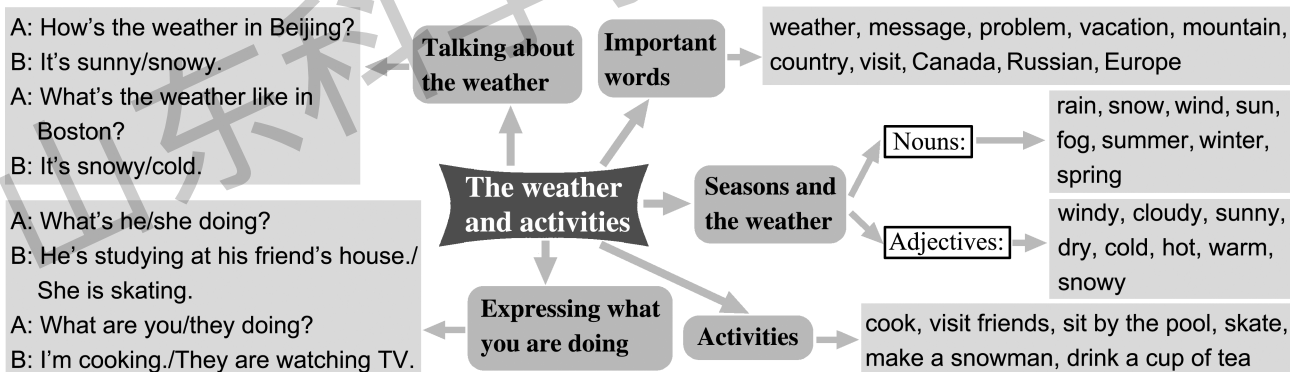
单元概要

本单元的中心话题是“Describe the weather”和“Describe what people are doing”，通过运用“How's the weather?”或者“What's the weather like?”以及描述天气情况的形容词来谈论不同城市、不同地区的天气状况，了解世界各地的气候差异。在“打电话”的情境中，询问人们正在做的事情，学会运用现在进行时表示一段时间内正在进行的动作和状态；利用明信片的形式描述天气，将与天气有关的服饰以及活动展现出来，明确明信片的书写要素、正文部分的内容要点，同时掌握通过谈论天气来促进交际的策略。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用“天气与活动”话题中的 raining, snowing, rainy, cloudy, windy 等词汇，学会目标语言“How's the weather? /It's sunny. /What's he doing? /He is cooking.”的基本结构、表意功能，掌握描述天气的形容词以及人们相应的即时活动，了解不同国家人们假期的行为活动，从而理解朋友和家人之间的友谊和亲情，感受地域差异；学会观察天气，调整自己的情绪；了解世界各地的天气情况，增强世界观念。



文化探索

每个国家和民族都有自己的风俗习惯。在英国，人们见面时有个习惯——谈论天气。

In England, people don't often talk to each other(互相) when they travel(旅行). If you get on a bus or a train, you can always see some people sitting and looking out of the windows. Other people may read books or newspapers.

When you meet English people, they often start a conversation(谈话) by talking about the weather. So when you meet somebody(某人) in England, you can say, "Nice weather for the time of the year!"

"But it was a little cold yesterday," somebody may answer.

"But it will get a bit(有点) warmer later," you can say.

Talking like this, they will think, "How friendly you are!"



Questions:

What do English people often do when they travel? How do you start a conversation friendly when you meet English people? Do you know any other country's custom? Please share(分享) with us.

Section A



重点突破

1. —*How's the weather in Shanghai?* 上海的天气怎么样?

—*It's cloudy.* 多云。

【感知】(1) *How is the weather today?*

(2) *What do you think of the weather today?*

(3) *What is the weather like?*

【思考】用来询问天气情况的常用表达方式为_____；其同义句为_____，其中_____是不可数名词，意为“天气”，不与不定冠词 a/an 连用。_____为形容词，意为“多云的”。类似的还有：sun 阳光—_____晴朗的；rain 雨—_____下雨的；snow 雪—_____下雪的；wind 风—_____多风的。

【运用】

(1) _____ fine weather it is today!

- A. How B. What
C. How a D. What a

(2) —*How is the weather in Jinan?* (改为同义句)

—_____ the weather _____ in Jinan?

(3) —_____ the weather like in Haikou today?

—_____ rainy.

- A. How's; Is B. What's; Is
C. What's; It's D. How's; It's

2. —*How's it going?* 情况怎么样?

—*Not bad, thanks.* 还不错，谢谢。

【感知】(1) *How's it going* with Peter?

(2) *How's it going* with your study?

(3) *Pretty good! /Great! /Not(too/so) bad!*

【思考】_____是用来询问对方处境或事情进展的习惯语，相当于“近况如何?”，后接介词短语 with，可与_____互换。答语常用“_____”或“Great!”。“很好，相当不错!”可用_____；“还不错”可用_____；“马马虎虎”可用_____；“糟糕的”可用_____。

【运用】

(1) —_____

—*Pretty good. Everything goes well. Thanks.*

A. What are you doing?

B. How are you?

C. How's it going?

D. What's wrong?

(2) —*How's it going in that city?*

—_____ There is a big earthquake

A. Great. B. Not bad.

C. Terrible. D. That's OK.

(3) *How's everything going with you?* (改为同义句)

_____ with you?

3. *Can I take a message for him?* 我给他捎个口信好吗?

【感知】(1) *Would you like to leave a message?*

(2) *What exciting news* it is!

(3) *Can you help me find out some information?*

【思考】_____是可数名词，意为“消息，信息”，take a message for sb. 意为“为某人捎个口信”。常用短语：_____捎信给某人，

_____留口信。而 news 和 information 都是不可数名词，_____侧重于新闻、消息，而_____侧重于相关信息的信息。

【运用】

(1) When he comes, ask him to leave a _____.

- A. message B. letter
C. diary D. information

(2) 彼得可以替我捎口信吗?

Can Peter _____ a _____ for me?

(3) When he heard the bad _____, he cried sadly.

- A. information B. news
C. message D. sentence

4. —*Could you just tell him to call me back?* 你能告诉他让他回我电话吗?

—*Sure, no problem.* 当然，没问题。

【感知】(1) *Could I go to the movie* tonight?

(2) Do you have any problems?



(3) Can you *answer* my questions?

【思考】_____是情态动词,意为“能,可以”,语气比 can 委婉、客气,回答时仍用_____回答。“给某人回电话”是_____;_____表示说话者认为难以解决的问题、数学难题。_____表示说话者需要寻找答案的问题。

【运用】

(1) —Could you please take a message?

—_____

- A. Yes, I could. B. Yes, I take.
C. Sure, no problem. D. No, I don't.

(2) —Can I bring Tom to your birthday party?

—Sure,_____.

- A. no problem B. not at all
C. my pleasure D. well done



基础强化

一、单项选择

- It's too _____ outside. You must put on your coat.
A. hot B. cool C. cold D. warm
- What _____ the children _____?
—They're making a snowman.
A. is; doing B. does; do
C. are; doing D. do; do
- _____ you _____ the window?
—Yes, I am.
A. Do; clean B. Is; cleaning
C. Do; cleaning D. Are; cleaning
- There _____ a lot of _____ outside.
A. are; snow B. is; snow
C. are; snows D. is; snows
- The twins _____ red skirts. They look nice.
A. are wearing B. are putting on
C. are putting D. wearing
- What are the students doing?
—Some are _____ books and others are _____ at the blackboard.
A. looking; reading
B. reading; watching
C. watching; looking
D. reading; looking

7. She isn't eating _____. She is drinking _____.

- A. apple; tea B. milk; a pear
C. a egg; milk D. an orange; orange

8. —How is it _____?

—It's not bad.

- A. go B. going C. goes D. is

9. I don't like winter _____ there's too much snow and ice.

- A. so B. but C. and D. because

10. —_____ the weather there?

—Terrible. It's _____.

- A. How's; wind B. What's; sunny
C. How's; raining D. What's; windy

二、根据句意及图片提示填写单词



1



2



3



4



5

- It's _____ today. I want to take a bus to school.
- It's a beautiful and _____ day today.
- Today is cold. It is _____.
- In Shanghai, it's _____ these two days.
- Listen! It's _____ now.

三、根据图示补全问答

1. —How is the weather in Beijing?

—_____



2. —What is your brother doing?

—_____



3. —What are your friends doing?

—_____



4. —What do you usually do on rainy days?

—_____



四、句子翻译

1. —How's the weather? —It's raining.

—_____? —_____.

2. —约翰现在在做什么?

——他在踢足球。他每周六踢足球。

—_____ John doing _____?

—He _____ soccer. He _____ soccer every Saturday.



3. — 莉萨又在通过电话交谈吗?
— 是的,她每天通过电话交谈三个小时。
— _____ Lisa _____ on the phone _____?
— Yes, she talks on the phone for three hours every day.
4. 我给他捎个口信好吗?
Can I _____ for him?



能力提升

五、完形填空

Dear Jenny,

I'm very happy to 1 that you're coming to Beijing for your vacation. Now let me 2 you something about the city. There are 3 interesting places here. You can 4 the Great Wall, the Palace Museum, Tian'anmen Square and many 5 places. The people here are very 6. They're always happy to help others. You can also 7 delicious food here. But I don't think it's the best time to come 8 August, because it's very hot. You can come in September 9 October. The weather is usually 10 and cool at that time.

I hope you can have a good time in Beijing.

Yours,

Li Yan

- A. study B. know
C. find D. notice
- A. tell B. talk C. say D. speak
- A. lot B. lots C. lot of D. lots of
- A. look for B. look at C. visit D. find
- A. other B. the other
C. others D. another
- A. cold B. healthy C. friendly D. well
- A. smell B. taste C. look D. cook
- A. in B. on C. at D. of
- A. and B. but C. or D. from
- A. rainy B. snowy C. cloudy D. sunny

六、阅读理解

It's a sunny and warm Sunday morning. My parents, my sister and I are all at home. My parents don't have to go to work, and my sister and I

don't have to go to school. We are all in the yard (院子). Look! My father is cleaning his bike. He often goes to work by bike. The bike ride takes him about ten minutes. My mother is watering the flowers. The flowers make our yard very beautiful. We all like the flowers. My sister is playing with a dog. It's her pet dog. The dog is very smart. My mother often takes the dog out for a walk after dinner. What am I doing? I'm drawing. I like drawing very much. I want to join the art club at school. It's a nice day and we're busy in the yard. We are very happy today!

- How's the weather today?
A. It's sunny. B. It's windy.
C. It's cloudy. D. It's rainy.
- How many people are there in the family?
A. Three. B. Four. C. Five. D. Six.
- How does the father often go to work?
A. By subway. B. By car.
C. By bus. D. By bike.
- What's the mother doing?
A. She's cleaning the yard.
B. She's reading a book.
C. She's watering the flowers.
D. She's playing with a dog.
- Which of the following is TRUE?
A. The sister is very smart.
B. The father doesn't like the flowers.
C. The writer doesn't want to join the art club.
D. The mother often walks the dog after dinner.

七、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话

W: Hello? This is Jenny.

M: Hi, Jenny. It's Alex. 1

W: I am playing with my sister in the snow.

M: In the snow? 2

W: Yes. It's cold here. I'm going to skate this afternoon.

M: 3

W: Yes, I can skate well. How's the weather in your city?

M: 4 I'm playing soccer with my friends.

W: Do you play soccer every day?

M: Yes, I play it after school every day.



W: I see. 5

M: Thank you.

- A. Have a good time.
B. What are you doing now?
C. It's cool and cloudy.
D. Is it snowy in your city?
E. Can you skate?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

Section B



重点突破

1. I'm having a great time visiting my aunt in Canada. 我正在加拿大愉快地拜访我的阿姨。

【感知】(1) We often *have a great time playing* basketball after school.

(2) I want to *visit Hangzhou*.

(3) There are many *visitors* in this city.

【思考】_____ 意为“玩得高兴, 过得愉快”, 同义短语为 _____ 和 _____. *have a great time(in) doing sth.* 意为“愉快地做某事”。_____ 为及物动词, 意为“拜访, 探望”, 后接表示人的名词或代词。visit 还可意为“参观, 游览”, 后接表示地点的名词。“参观者, 游览者, 游客”是 _____, 其复数形式为 _____, 与 *tourist* 同义。

【运用】

(1) 我们在公园里玩得很高兴。

We are _____ a good _____ in the park.

(2) I want to _____ (拜访) my teacher this Sunday.

(3) There are many _____ (visit) in Hong Kong every year.

2. It's very relaxing here. 这儿令人很轻松。

【感知】(1) Watching TV is a *relaxing* thing.

(2) You will *feel relaxed* when you listen to music.

(3) The concert can help you to *relax*.

【思考】_____ 是动词, 意为“放松, 放轻松”;

_____ 是形容词, 意为“令人感到轻松地”, 主语是物; _____ 是形容词, 用来形容“感到轻松地”, 主语是人。类似用法的还有: *interesting* 和 *interested*; *surprising* 和 *surprised*; *boring* 和 *bored*; *worrying* 和 *worried*, 等等。

【运用】

(1) —What do you think of the story?

—It's _____ (relax).

(2) Yoga(瑜伽) helps people keep _____ and _____.

- A. health; relax B. health; relaxed
C. healthy; relaxed D. healthy; relaxing

(3) Listening to music is very _____.

- A. relax B. relaxed
C. relaxing D. to relax

3. My family and I are on a vacation in the mountains. 我和我家人在山里度假。

【感知】(1) New Year's Day is a *holiday* for everyone.

(2) The library is closed during the college *vacation*.

(3) I want to go on a *vacation*.

【思考】on(a) vacation = on a _____ 意为“在度假”; _____ 意为“去度假”; _____ 意为“假期”, 指较长的一段休息时间, 可与 _____ 替换。但是 _____ 常指假日、休息日。

【运用】

(1) 孩子们正在度假。

The children _____ a vacation.

(2) —I'm going to spend my holiday in Hawaii.

—_____ and don't forget to send me a postcard.

- A. That sounds good
B. Have a good time
C. Good luck
D. Can I go with you

4. What are you doing in the rainy weather? 下雨天你在做什么?

【感知】(1) What is he doing in the *rainy* weather?

(2) It often *rains* in the south of China.

(3) It's *raining* heavily outside.

【思考】_____ 意为“下雨的, 多雨的”。_____ 作动词时意为“下雨”; 作名词时, 意为“雨”。



“雨,雨水”,通常是不可数名词,也可以指可数名词,意思是“一场雨”。_____是 rain 的现在分词形式。常用_____来修饰名词 rain,表示大雨,如果修饰动词 rain,指“下大雨”则用副词_____。如: It is raining heavily outside now.

【运用】

(1) —I hear that you studied in New York last week. Was it sunny or rainy there?

—_____

- A. It was rainy. B. It is sunny.
C. No, it isn't. D. I am afraid not.

(2) Don't go out! It _____ (rain) outside now.

(3) It is a _____ rain outside! Look! It is raining _____ now.

- A. heavy; heavy B. heavy; heavily
C. heavily; heavy D. heavily; heavily



基础强化

一、单项选择

1. Dale, are you having a great time _____ the village?

- A. visit B. to visit
C. visits D. visiting

2. I'm watching TV in the living room and my mother is _____ in the kitchen.

- A. shopping B. cooking
C. sleeping D. exercising

3. There is lots of _____ in this place in summer.

- A. snow B. snowy C. rain D. rainy

4. Could you tell her _____ to me?

- A. write B. writes C. writing D. to write

5. Look! Some boys _____ soccer there.

- A. playing B. are playing
C. to play D. play

6. —_____

—They are studying.

- A. What are they doing? B. Where are they?
C. How are they? D. What do they do?

7. —How's the weather in Boston?

—_____

- A. Sounds good. B. Fine, thank you.
C. That's right. D. It's windy.

8. —_____

—Not bad.

- A. What are you doing?
B. What do you do?
C. How's it going?
D. What do you look like?

9. The boy _____ cool _____ his new hat.

- A. looks like; in B. looks; in
C. is looking like; on D. is looking; on

10. —What does your sister usually do in the evening?

—She usually _____ TV, but now she _____ a book.

- A. watch; read
B. watches; is reading
C. is watching; sees
D. watches; is seeing

二、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. —What's the weather like in Beijing?

—It's _____ (wind) and _____ (cloud).

2. It's _____ (rain) in Boston, but it's _____ (sun) in Toronto.

3. Look! Tom _____ (play) ping-pong with his friends, and they _____ (have) a good time.

4. My father usually _____ (watch) TV on weekends, but now he _____ (read) at home.

5. Tell him _____ (call) me this afternoon. He often _____ (call) me.

三、连词成句

1. the weather, how, in, is, your village (?)

2. the party, is, have, a good time, Jack, at (?)

3. watch TV, are, do, or, you, your homework (?)

4. his brother, is, with, tennis, Tom, play (.)

5. sit, the pool, always, the old man, by (.)

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 有很多人在这里度假。

There are many people here _____.



2. 看这群人正在打篮球。

Look at this _____ of people _____ basketball.

3. 一些人正在公园里唱歌,另一些人正在跳舞。他们正玩得很高兴。

In the park, some are singing, others are _____. They're _____ a good _____.

4. 我们在泉城广场真的很放松,因为那里是一个有趣并令人放松的地方。

We're really _____ in Quancheng Square. Because it's an interesting and _____ place.

5. 我们喜欢躺在沙滩上晒太阳。

We enjoy _____ the beach in the sun.

五、看图写话,请描述图中的天气及活动



1. _____



2. _____



3. _____



能力提升

六、阅读理解

In England, people often talk about the weather because they can experience four seasons in one day. In the morning the weather is warm like in spring. An hour later black clouds come, and then it rains hard. In the afternoon the sky will be clear, the sun will begin to shine, and it will be summer at this time of the day.

In England, you can also have summer in winter, or have winter in summer. So in winter you can swim sometimes and in summer sometimes you should take warm clothes with you.

When you go to England, you'll see that some English people usually take an umbrella or a raincoat with them on a sunny day, but you should not laugh at them. If you don't take an umbrella or a raincoat, you'll regret(遗憾) later in England.

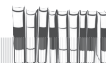
根据短文内容,判断正(T)误(F)。

- () 1. In England, the weather might change (变化) quickly in a day.
- () 2. In summer, it's usually too hot in England.
- () 3. In England, sometimes it's hot in winter.
- () 4. Some English people usually take an umbrella or a raincoat with them because it often rains in England.
- () 5. If someone takes an umbrella or a raincoat, he'll regret later in the day.

七、完形填空

The weather is different in different parts of the world. In some places it is 1, and in others it is humid. If the weather is too dry, the land will not be 2 for animals or plants(植物). In humid weather there may be too much 3. The rivers may go over their sides. The 4 may take the bridge away. If the rivers go over their sides, a lot of people may not have enough food. If there is very dry weather for a long 5, the river beds may be dry. In some other parts of the world the weather may be very cold. There may be 6. When it snows, the trees, the buildings and everything look 7. In winter the days are short and the nights are long. 8 cold weather nights, when there are no clouds or winds, the 9 is very clear. And the moon and the stars are very beautiful. People may 10 their coats and go out for long walks. When they come back to their houses, they may be happy to have hot coffee and cakes by the fire(火).

1. A. drier B. dry C. cold D. hot
2. A. bad B. worse C. well D. good
3. A. rain B. snow C. wind D. cloud
4. A. river B. rain C. water D. wind
5. A. time B. way C. river D. month
6. A. rain B. snow C. blow D. shine
7. A. blue B. green C. yellow D. white
8. A. On B. At C. In D. After
9. A. river B. land C. sky D. earth
10. A. wear B. put on C. in D. dress



单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What sports can they play?



2. Where is Eric's schoolbag?

- A. Under the bed. B. On the chair.
C. On the bed.

3. Does Alice have a CD player?

- A. Yes, she does. B. No, she doesn't.
C. We don't know.

4. What does the woman want to buy?



5. What's the weather like?

- A. Sunny. B. Snowing. C. Raining.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6 至 8 题。

6. When does Bill usually do his homework?

- A. On weekends. B. On Saturday morning.
C. On Saturday afternoon.

7. What does Bill usually do after lunch?

- A. Play soccer. B. Do homework.
C. Go to the movies.

8. Who does Linda usually go to the movies with?

- A. Her brother. B. Her parents.
C. Her sister.

听第二段对话,回答第 9、10 题。

9. What is Eric doing now?

- A. Visiting his grandma.
B. Having a party.
C. Playing games.

10. How's the weather in Mexico?

- A. It's raining. B. It's hot.

C. It's snowing.

(三)请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入 11~15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

11. It's cloudy. But it is _____ now.

12. Jack's shirt and trousers are _____.

13. It is warm and Jack has a _____ idea.

14. Jack flies his kite and _____ after it's warm.

15. What a _____ boy Jack is!

二、单项选择

1. _____ is the weather?

—It's windy.

A. What B. How C. When D. Why

2. It's _____ heavily now. Let's make a snowman.

- A. sunny B. snowing
C. windy D. raining

3. It's very _____ today. You'd better wear your shorts and T-shirt.

- A. cold B. dry C. hot D. cool

4. —Sorry, I forget your telephone number.

—Let me tell you _____.

- A. either B. just C. again D. too

5. —Can John play soccer with us, Mrs. Black?

—Wait a minute, please. He _____ on the phone.

- A. talks B. talked
C. talking D. is talking

6. —These days, it often snows in Jinan.

—Don't you have fun on _____ days?

- A. wet B. rainy
C. dry D. snowy

7. The weather here is cool, just right for _____.

- A. walk B. walking
C. to walk D. walks

8. —How is it going?

—_____ I enjoy the life here.

- A. Terrible. B. Useful.
C. Great. D. Very bad.



9. —I'm going to Shanghai Disneyland this summer holiday.

—

- A. You are welcome. B. That's a good idea.
B. Best wishes to you. D. Have a good time.

10. —Hello! _____ Mr. Green?

—Yes, this is Mr. Green. Please speak.

- A. Is he B. Are you
C. Is this D. Is that

三、完形填空

It is sunny in the morning today. Peter is 1 soccer with his friends in the park. After an hour, they 2 under a tree to have a rest.

“3 going to the mountains this afternoon?” one of Peter's friends says.

“That sounds great. But it will be rainy and 4 this afternoon.” Peter looks at the sky and says 5 his friends.

In the afternoon, it is 6 rainy and cloudy. His friends feel surprised.

“How do you know about the 7, Peter?” John asks.

“I can predict(预测) the weather. Tomorrow will be sunny and hot,” Peter says.

Peter can tell 8 the weather correctly(正确地). So his friends like 9 him, “What will the weather be like?”

After two months, Mike asks, “What will the weather be like this afternoon, Peter?”

“Sorry, I don't 10,” he says, “my radio is broken(坏的).”

1. A. singing B. dancing
C. swimming D. playing
2. A. help B. sit C. swim D. work
3. A. What B. How
C. What about D. How old
4. A. cloudy B. rainy C. snowy D. sunny
5. A. in B. on C. of D. to
6. A. very B. really C. too D. so
7. A. mountain B. park
C. weather D. country
8. A. him B. her C. it D. them
9. A. asking B. answering
C. watching D. visiting

10. A. want B. know C. have D. like

四、从方框内选择合适的句子补全对话, 有一项多余

A: Hello! This is Jill.

B: Hi, Jill! 1 Where are you now?

A: 2

B: Really? How is it going?

A: 3 People in Fuyang are very friendly.

B: How is the weather in Fuyang?

A: 4 I like the weather in China.

B: That's good. 5 The weather is a little cold.

A. It's sunny these days.

B. I'm fine.

C. Great!

D. It's rainy in Toronto today.

E. I'm in Fuyang, China.

F. This is Dave.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

Li Ming is staying with the Wang's family for the weekend. Today it is warm and fine. The family are having dinner in the garden. They often have dinner in the garden on a warm and fine spring day. Now Mr. and Mrs. Wang are sitting at the table with Li Ming under a tree.

“It's great to have dinner out here on such a lovely day,” Mrs. Wang says. “What's the weather like in your hometown, Li Ming?” Mr. Wang asks. “It's not very warm in spring. But I like the spring there best.” “Help yourself to some cakes, Li Ming,” Mrs. Wang says. “Thanks,” says Li Ming. “The cakes are very nice. I enjoy the dinner very much.”

1. Li Ming is staying with the Wang's family for _____.

- A. a week B. a day
C. the weekend D. a month

2. The family are having their dinner in the _____.

- A. house B. garden
C. park D. zoo

3. What's the weather like today?

- A. Warm. B. Warm and fine.
C. Cold. D. Cold but fine.



4. What's the weather like in Li Ming's hometown?
 - A. It isn't very cold in spring.
 - B. It's very nice.
 - C. It isn't very warm in spring.
 - D. It's very warm
5. How does Li Ming like the dinner?
 - A. He doesn't enjoy the cake.
 - B. He only enjoys the cake.
 - C. He enjoys the dinner very much.
 - D. He enjoys himself very much.

六、根据首字母、汉语提示及句意完成单词

1. It's _____ (多风的) these days. We can fly a kite this afternoon.
2. My brother isn't at home. Can I take a _____ (信息) for him?
3. They are having a good time on _____ (假日).
4. Mike is a good student. He studies very h _____.
5. Don't be late for school a _____, or Miss Li will call your parents.

七、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. There are many _____ (country) in Africa.
2. Don't go out! It _____ (rain) outside now.
3. My brother _____ (talk) on the phone for two hours every day.
4. It's _____ (sun) today. Let's go fishing.
5. Lucy's father and mother often _____ (take) a walk after supper.

八、连词成句或根据图片补全问答

1. — _____
— It's raining.



2. — What are they doing?
— _____



3. — What's the man doing?
— He _____.



4. you, me, can, help, take a message, for her (?)

5. are, watch TV, they, in the room, their parents, with (.)

九、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

There was a heavy snow last night. Maria stayed at home. Her cousin Cara came to visit her. She came back from Beijing. She told Maria something about her vacation. "It was pretty good." She said. Cara visited the Palace Museum and the Great Wall. She took a lot of photos.

It was lunchtime. Maria's parents were not at home. (1) They decided to cook by themselves. Maria cooked noodles with some tomatoes and peppers (胡椒). After Cara ate up the noodles, she said slowly, "I think it is delicious!" But Maria thought the food was too awful. She said, "Cara, thank you, but I put too many peppers!"

1. How was the weather?

2. What did Cara do in Beijing?

3. 将(1)处画线句子译成汉语。

4. What's the meaning of the underlined word "awful" in Chinese?

5. Why did Maria think the noodles were too awful?

十、书面表达

假如你是 Tim, 来济南学习已经有一年了, 现在要写信告诉你远在英国朋友 Mary 济南的天气情况。信的开头已给出。70 词左右。

Dear Mary,

How time flies! I have been in Jinan for a year.

Unit 8

Is there a post office near here?

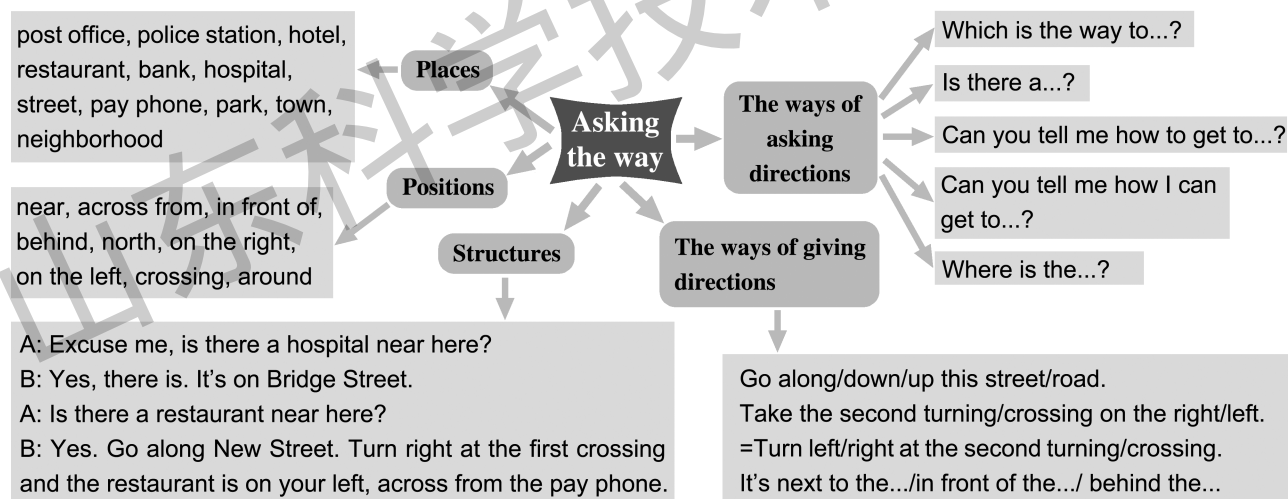
单元概要

本单元的核心话题是“Talk about asking for and giving directions on the street.”。本单元内容围绕问路的常用语,通过学习目标语言“Is there...?”的基本结构,掌握其表意功能,学会描述周边环境,以及使用相应介词 in front of, next to, across from, between...and..., behind 等描述相应地方的位置。通过真实的情境,有礼貌地进行交流;围绕邻里社区的各种设施和场所位置,描述自己的街坊邻里,增强社会责任感,遵守社会公共秩序。



学习目标

通过对本单元的学习,能够运用以下单词、短语和句式来描述各种社区设施以及街区环境,学会礼貌地问路和指路的方法;能够正确运用 there be 句型、各种方位介词以及 where 引导的特殊疑问句进行交际;能够正确运用方位介词描述社区设施的具体位置,能够在真实情景中有礼貌地询问和应答,促进人与人之间的情感交流,增进情谊;学会关注他人,关注社会,多做有益于他人和社会的事情。



文化探索

假如你去了英国,在街上你一定要小心,因为英国的交通是靠左侧通行的。

If you go to England, you must be very careful(小心的) in the streets because the traffic(车辆) drives on the left. Before you cross a street, you must look to the right first and then left. In the morning and in the evening when people go to or come from work, the streets are very busy. Traffic is the most dangerous(危险的) then. When you drive a car in England, you have to be careful, too. Always remember the traffic moves(行驶) on the left. So you must be careful to have a look first, or you will go the wrong way.

In many England cities, there are big buses with two floors(层). You can sit on the second floor. From there you can see the city well. It's very interesting.



Questions:

Why must you be very careful if you go to England? Does any other country have the same traffic rules with England? Please share(分享) it with us.

Section A



重点突破

1. —Is there a hospital near here? 在这附近有医院吗?

—Yes, there is. 是的, 有一个。

【感知】(1) *There is a book on the desk.*

(2) *There is a book and two pens on the desk.*

(3) How many people *are there* in your class?

【思考】there be 句型表示“存在;有”, 动词 be 为谓语。如果主语为单数, 用_____ ; 如果主语为复数, 用_____ ; 如果主语为不可数名词, 用_____。there be 句型中的 be 的形式(is/are) 应和 be 后的主语保持一致, 即采取“_____”。

【运用】

(1) There _____ not _____ milk in the cup on the table.

- A. are; many B. are; much
C. is; many D. is; much

(2) How many _____ are there in the room?

- A. apple B. students
C. milk D. paper

(3) There _____ a lot of good news in today's newspaper.

- A. is B. are C. was D. were

2. *Where is the pay phone?* 公用电话在哪里?

【感知】(1) Excuse me, *is there a hospital near here?*

(2) Excuse me, *which is the way to the hotel?*

(3) Excuse me, *how can I get to the zoo?*

【思考】问路指路常用句型:

(1) 问路

- ① Excuse me, where is the...?
② Excuse me, is there a... near here?
③ Excuse me, which is the way to...?
④ Excuse me, how can I get to...?

(2) 指路

- ① Go along/down/up this street/road.

② Take the second turning/crossing on the right/left. = Turn left/right at the second turning/crossing.

③ It's next to the.../in front of the.../behind the...

【运用】

(1) 在公园附近有餐馆吗?

Is _____ a restaurant _____ the _____?

(2) 直走, 然后你就会看到一家银行。

_____, and you will find a bank.

(3) —_____ Can you show me the way to the zoo?

—Certainly! Go along this road to the end.

- A. I'm sorry. B. Pardon?
C. Thank you. D. Excuse me.

3. *I like to spent time there on weekends.* 我喜欢在那里过周末。

【感知】(1) *I spent two hours on this maths problem.*

(2) *A new computer costs a lot of money.*

(3) *It took them three years to build this road.*

【思考】_____, _____, _____ 和 _____ 都可以表示“花费”, 但用法却不相同。_____ 的主语必须是人, _____ 表示“在……上花费时间(金钱)”。“花费时间(金钱)做某事”则用 _____。_____ 的主语是物, 还表示“值”, 常用结构为 _____, 意为“某物花了(某人)多少钱”。_____ 意为“做某事花了某人多少时间”。pay 常用“_____”结构, 意为“付钱(给某人)买……”。

【运用】

(1) He often _____ much time playing games.

(2) It _____ her two hours to do her homework.

(3) How much did the phone _____ you?

(4) Allan _____ 380 yuan for the e-dictionary.

4. *The pay phone is in front of the library.* 公用电话在图书馆前面。

【感知】(1) *The pay phone is across from the library.*

(2) *The pay phone is next to the library.*



(3) The pay phone is *opposite to* the library.

【思考】掌握表示方位的介词和介词短语:

_____ 在上面; _____ 在下面; _____ 在里面; _____ 在旁边; _____ 在附近; _____ 在……旁边, 紧靠……; _____ 在……前面; _____ 在后面; _____ 在……对面; _____ 在……和……之间。

【运用】

Mike lives 1 London. His father has a restaurant and his mother is a policewoman. She works in the police 2. Mike 3 to school on weekdays. The school is a little 4 from his home and his parents are very busy. So Mike goes to school by 5. He rides 6 Center Street. Then he 7 left at the second 8. Next he goes down the Fifth Avenue and the school is 9 the bank and the shop. It's 10 from a library.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____
10. _____



基础强化

一、根据句意和汉语提示写出所缺的单词

1. There are many trees in the small _____ (城镇).
2. This _____ (大街) is very long and clean.
3. Lisa's mother works in a _____ (银行).
4. Sir, you need to _____ (付) 200 *yuan* for the books.
5. My father is still in his _____ (办公室).
6. There is a big _____ (宾馆) near here.
7. The cat is sleeping _____ (在……后面) the door.
8. You must look at the traffic lights before you go _____ (穿过) the road.

二、单项选择

1. There _____ some fruit and vegetables in it.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
2. I will pay thirty *yuan* _____ the book.
A. on B. in C. to D. for
3. The bank is _____ the hotel and the store.
A. next to B. near C. between D. Next

4. The boy can't see very well, so he sits _____ the classroom.

- A. in front of B. in the front of
C. at the end of D. at the back of

5. A bird flew into the kitchen _____ the window.

- A. across B. above C. through D. under

6. Our library is _____ from the class building.

We must _____ the playground to go there.

- A. across; cross B. cross; across
C. go across; cross D. cross; cross

7. It _____ about eight minutes for the light to travel from the sun to the earth.

- A. pays B. costs C. spends D. takes

8. —Can you tell me _____ to go to the zoo?

—Yes, turn left and you can see it.

- A. how B. where C. why D. when

三、连词成句

1. the classroom, are, in, some desks, there (.)

2. the library, across from, the bank, is (.)

3. in, are, some people, there, dance, the square (.)

4. the pay phone, a hospital, there, near, is (.)

5. the school, is, between, and, Mike's house, the hotel (.)

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

1. 在邮局的前面有一个银行。

There is a bank _____ the post office.

2. 我不知道邮局在哪里。

I don't know where the _____ is.

3. 医院离这里不远。

The hospital is not _____ here.

4. 超市紧挨着我们的学校。

The supermarket is _____ our school.

5. 我家对面有一所学校。

There is a school _____ my home.

6. 瞧! 有一些女孩儿在树下跳舞。

Look! There _____ some girls _____ under the tree.



五、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话, 有两项多余

A: Where is the History Museum?

B: 1

A: Look! There is a policeman over there. 2

B: Excuse me. Can you show us the way to the History Museum, please?

C: Yes. Go down this street, and take the second turning on the right. 3

B: People's Square?

C: Yes. There is a tall building opposite to People's Square. It is the History Museum. 4

B: How far is it?

C: About half an hour's walk.

B: 5 Thanks a lot.

C: You're welcome.

- A. Then walk on until you reach People's Square.
B. I'm not sure. It's probably down the road.
C. And it's about 2 kilometers from here.
D. You can't miss it.
E. I see.
F. Why not have a walk there?
G. Let's ask him.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____



能力提升

六、完形填空

Dear Lucy,

How's everything? Tomorrow is Saturday and it is my fifteenth birthday. I'm going to have a birthday party 1. It will begin at 8:00 in the evening. Would you like to 2 to my birthday party? Now let me tell you the way 3 my house. First, walk from our school and turn right, 4 go straight along Zhonghua Road. 5 you see Bank of China, please turn left. It's a very 6 building, you can't miss it. And then walk along and turn right 7 the second crossing. After about fifteen minutes' walk, you can 8 Sunny Fruit Shop. My home is 9 it. And I'll 10 you in front of my house at half past seven

in the evening. Welcome to my party. See you tomorrow.

Yours,

Amy

1. A. at school B. at the park
C. in a house D. at home
2. A. come B. go C. take D. join
3. A. in B. to C. for D. at
4. A. or B. but C. so D. then
5. A. And B. When C. But D. Where
6. A. small B. red C. tall D. short
7. A. on B. in C. behind D. at
8. A. watch B. look
C. see D. read
9. A. next in B. in the front of
C. across from D. between
10. A. take out B. look at
C. put on D. wait for

七、阅读理解

It's a fine Sunday. Tom does not go to school today. But he is not at home. He's now sitting on a Chinese bus. All his classmates will go to see a movie this afternoon. His teacher Mr. Wang will go there, too. They will meet at 2:00 p. m. at the gate of the movie house. An old man gets on the bus. Tom stands up and says to the old man, "Come and sit here, please." The old man goes over and sits down. He says, "Thank you very much, my boy. You are a good student." Tom answers, "You're welcome." "What school are you in?" the old man asks Tom. "I am in No. 2 Middle School." Tom answers. "No. 2? That's a good school. My son is a teacher there. He is an English teacher." The old man says. "English teacher? Excuse me, grandpa. What's your son's name, please?" Tom asks. "Mr. Wang," says the old man. "Ah, he is my English teacher." Just then, the bus stops near the movie house. Tom says goodbye to the old man and gets off the bus. The old man smiles to Tom.

1. In the sentence "the bus stops near the movie house", "stop" means _____.
A. 车站 B. 开
C. 关 D. 停



2. Which is right?
 - A. It's Saturday today.
 - B. It's not fine today.
 - C. Tom goes to school on Sunday.
 - D. Tom is a student of No. 2 Middle School.
3. Mr. Wang is _____.
 - A. at home today B. the old man's son
 - C. the old man's father D. a Chinese teacher
4. What do you think of Tom?
 - A. Tom is a good student.
 - B. Tom is a bad student.
 - C. He does wrong things.
 - D. He is a good teacher.
5. Which is right?
 - A. Tom goes to the movie house on an English car.
 - B. Only Tom and his teacher go to the movie house to see a movie.
 - C. They go to the movie house for a meeting.
 - D. The old man's son is Tom's English teacher.

八、选词并用其适当形式填空

hungry, behind, between, busy, taxi

Dear Tom,

I'm in the park with my aunt. It's on Center Street. You can take a 1 here.

Center Street is a 2 street. You can see lots of restaurants and supermarkets on it. Oh, there is a bank on it, too. It's 3 Peter's Market and Tom's restaurant. Oh, the small park is 4 Peter's Market. Now I'm 5. I want to buy some food at Tom's restaurant. If you can't find me, you can call my aunt at 120-1231.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

Section B



重点突破

1. **Just go along Bridge Street and turn left when you see the library.** 就沿着大桥街走,看到图书馆时左转。

【感知】(1) We can *walk along/down* that road.
(2) *Turn left* and go along the street.

(3) *Turn right* at the first crossing and the restaurant is on your left.

【思考】_____是介词,意为“沿着”,相当于_____;
“向左转”是_____“向右转”是_____;
“在某人的左边/右边”是_____;
“Turn right/left at the + 序数词 + crossing” =
“Take the + 序数词 + crossing on the right/left”,表示“在第几个十字路口向右/左转”。

【运用】

(1) Just go along this street and turn _____.

The hotel is _____.

- A. left; left B. left; on the left
- C. on the left; left D. left; to the left

(2) 在第二个十字路口向左转。

_____ at the second crossing.

(3) In China, _____ (drive) on the right is right.

2. **I love to watch the monkeys climbing around.** 我爱看猴子们爬来爬去。

【感知】(1) I *watched* the pandas *eating* bamboo.

(2) I often *watch him play* basketball on the playground.

(3) I *watched* some boys *playing* football.

【思考】_____意为“观看某人正在做某事”,表示所做的事正在进行;
_____意为“观看某人做某事”,表示所做的事经常发生或做过。类似用法的单词还有 see, hear 等。如:
看见某人做或正在做某事 _____;
听见某人做或正在做某事 _____。

【运用】

(1) 我看见吉姆正在房间里练琴。

I _____ Jim _____ the piano in the room.

(2) 我经常看见汤姆和他的宠物狗玩耍。

I often watch Tom _____ his pet dog.

3. **It is very quiet and I enjoy reading there.** 这很安静,我很享受在那里读书。

【感知】(1) The children *enjoy playing* football.

(2) They *enjoy themselves* at the party.

(3) They *enjoy taking* photos.

【思考】“喜欢,享受……乐趣”为_____,其后可接名词、代词、动词-ing形式作宾语。“喜欢做某事”常用_____;
enjoy oneself 意为“玩得愉快”,相当于_____或_____。



【运用】

- (1) —Laura enjoys _____ story books.
—Me, too.
A. reading B. read C. to read D. reads
- (2) It is Sunday. Let's relax and enjoy _____.
A. we B. us
C. our D. ourselves
- (3) The children enjoy _____ (play) soccer after class.

4. To get there, I usually walk out and turn right on Bridge Road. 去那里我通常走出去,然后在大桥路右转。

【感知】(1) *To learn Chinese well, she studies hard.*

(2) *He works all day to make more money.*

(3) *They try their best to save the dying animal.*

【思考】句中 to get there 是动词不定式作目的状语,不定式在句子中可以充当 _____ 语、_____ 语、_____ 语、_____ 语或补语,不能充当谓语。表示目的的状语时,不定时可以放在句首,起强调作用,用逗号将其与句子主体部分隔开。

【运用】

- (1) —_____ English well, we must have a lot of practice or conversation with others.
—That's for sure. Practice makes perfect.
A. Speaking B. Spoken
C. To speak D. Speak
- (2) 为了更好地保护我们的环境,人们在超市购物时要尽量少使用塑料袋。
When shopping in the supermarket, they aren't supposed to use plastic bags _____
_____ protect our environment.



基础强化

一、用括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

- My sister often spends two hours _____ (finish) her homework.
- When I was free, I really enjoyed _____ (walk) around the town.
- The five boys attended a birthday party last Sunday and they enjoyed _____ (they) very much.
- I think you can find the answer _____ (easy).
- Would you like to go _____ (climb) with the foreigners?
—Sure. I'd love to.
- My father _____ (spend) most of the time with me on Sunday.
- There are two _____ (bank) in the neighborhood.
- My uncle often works late because he has a lot of work _____ (do).
- After school he often _____ (go) shopping in the supermarket.
- Does your sister like _____ (read) in her spare time(业余时间)?

二、单项选择

- Excuse me, _____
—It is in front of the library.
A. Is there a pay phone near here?
B. Where is the pay phone?
C. Is the pay phone far away from here?
D. Is the pay phone in front of the library?
- What do you like to do after school?
—I enjoy _____.
A. read books B. to read books
C. reading books D. reads books
- Go _____ the street and turn _____ left. You can find the library.
A. to; / B. down; /
C. down; on D. on; from
- Some boys enjoy _____ out their messages in bottles when they travel on the sea.
A. to send B. send
C. sending D. sent
- What are you doing?
—I am watching the dog _____ after the cat.
A. running B. to run
C. run D. to running
- Mike _____ a lot of time _____ computer games every week.
A. takes; to play B. spends; to play
C. spends; playing D. pays; for
- This math problem isn't so difficult that I can work it out _____.
A. easily B. usefully
C. loudly D. quietly
- I got up early this morning _____ my grandma at the airport.
A. to pick up B. picking up



C. picked up D. to picked up

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空词数不限

1. 在第一个十字路口向右拐。

_____ at the first crossing.

2. 我经常把我的空余时间花在看电视上。

I often _____ watching TV.

3. 当我和我弟弟打架的时候,我妈妈总是很生气。

My mother always gets angry _____
_____ my brother.

4. 为了保持健康,你应该多锻炼身体。

_____, you should take more exercise.

5. Rick 在公园对面的银行上班。

Rick works at the bank _____.

四、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话,有两项为多余选项

A: Excuse me. Could you tell me the way to the Fengyun Hotel?

B: Sorry. 1 I'm new here. 2

A: Excuse me, sir. Could you tell me how to get to the Fengyun Hotel?

C: Go along this street to the first crossing. Turn right. At the end of the street you'll see the hotel.

A: 3

C: Yes, it is about two kilometers away.

A: 4

C: Of course you can. The No. 8 bus will take you there.

A: Thank you very much.

C: 5

- A. What can I do for you?
B. Which bus shall I take?
C. I don't know.
D. Is it far from here?
E. You are welcome.
F. Can I take a bus to get there?
G. Please ask that man over there.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____



能力提升

五、完形填空

My name is Daisy. I 1 my parents in an apartment(公寓). The apartment is on 2 floor

of a tall building(建筑物). 3 14 floors and a car park in the basement(地下室). My father parks(停放) his 4 there.

Our apartment isn't in the center 5 the city. It's 3 km 6 the center. My father works in the city, 7 he goes to work 8 every morning. He doesn't drive(驾驶) his car. He uses (用) his car only at 9. Then he 10 us to the country or to the beach(海滩).

1. A. live in B. live with

C. have D. has

2. A. six B. sixth

C. the sixth D. five

3. A. There have B. There is

C. There are D. have

4. A. car B. taxi C. bus D. plane

5. A. in B. of C. with D. for

6. A. from B. in C. of D. at

7. A. because B. but C. so D. just

8. A. take a bus B. by bus

C. in bus D. by air

9. A. weekdays B. weeks

C. weekends D. week

10. A. takes B. helps C. wants D. says

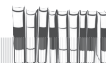
六、选出最佳选项,使短文内容完整

Lijiang is a beautiful old town, and 1. When you walk along the main(主要的) street of the town, first you will see some old buildings. 2 Some people live in the old buildings. Then you will see a large store in the center of the town. 3 There is a park at the end of the street. It's very beautiful and quiet. 4 People in the town are very nice. 5 This makes visitors feel like at home. So you can have a good time here.

- A. They're over 100 years old.
B. You can see green trees, beautiful flowers and clean lakes in the park.
C. it's very interesting to visit it
D. They always like to help others.
E. You can buy something you need there.
F. it's warm all year round
G. It is famous for its beautiful old buildings.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____



单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. How can the woman get to the hotel?



2. Where does the woman want to go?

- A. A library. B. A post office.
C. A police station.

3. Where is the bank?

- A. Between the hotels.
B. Next to the hospital.
C. Near the restaurant.

4. Where is the old hotel?

- A. Next to the library.
B. Near the park.
C. Across from the park.

5. What does Tony think of the supermarket?

- A. Big. B. Dirty. C. Clean.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. Where is the restaurant?

- A. In the park.
B. On Center Street.
C. Across from the park.

7. How can the woman get to the restaurant?

- A. Go along Bridge Street and turn left.
B. Go along North Road and turn left.
C. Go along North Road and turn right.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. What is John doing?

- A. Watching a video. B. Reading a book.
C. Doing homework.

9. Where is Mary's house?

- A. On Fifth Street. B. On the corner.
C. On New Street.

10. When will they meet?

- A. At 2:30. B. At 3:50. C. At 2:00.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Bridge Street
Susan's school is on this street. Across from the school is a 11. _____.
Next to the bookstore is a small 12. _____.
13. _____ the school is a park.
Just go down this street and turn 14. _____. There is a clothes store.
A 15. _____ is next to the clothes store.

二、单项选择

1. Look! There _____ a photo of our English teacher in today's newspaper!

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

2. Just walk down this road and you'll see the museum _____ your right.

- A. on B. in C. at D. by

3. My father didn't bring much _____ yesterday, so he only bought a small gift for me.

- A. vegetable B. money
C. juice D. tea

4. Bruce sits _____ Bob and Bill.

- A. between B. from C. up D. out

5. —_____ is the park?

—It's on Center Street.

- A. What B. When C. How D. Where

6. His house is on a _____ street, so it's very noisy during the day.

- A. quiet B. busy C. clean D. dirty

7. —Excuse me. Is there a bus to the Olympic Center?

—_____ You can take the No. 111 bus.

- A. Yes, it is. B. Yes, there is.
C. I'm not sure. D. Sorry, I have no idea.

8. When I play computer games, time goes _____.

- A. easily B. quietly
C. quickly D. differently



9. —How much does your brother _____ buying this T-shirt?

—100 yuan.

A. pay B. spend C. take D. cost

10. Sam enjoys _____ storybooks in the evening.

A. to read B. reads
C. reading D. read

三、完形填空

Hi, friends. There is a new 1 in my neighborhood. The food there is very delicious. My parents and I 2 dinner there on the weekend. It only takes 3 three or four minutes to walk there. After dinner, we often take a walk in the 4 across from the restaurant. And sometimes we 5. There is a big supermarket next to the park.

The restaurant is also a great 6 to have big parties. I will have my 14th birthday party there next Friday. If you are 7, welcome to my party. You can find the restaurant 8. It's on Zhongshan Road, 9 a bank and a hotel. Oh, I 10 to tell you the name of the restaurant. It's Jinchao Restaurant.

1. A. hotel B. bank
C. hospital D. restaurant
2. A. cook B. have C. sell D. follow
3. A. him B. them C. us D. her
4. A. park B. library C. office D. store
5. A. play sports B. take a trip
C. go swimming D. go shopping
6. A. time B. place C. country D. number
7. A. lazy B. short C. free D. funny
8. A. usually B. friendly C. early D. easily
9. A. between B. after C. under D. from
10. A. learn B. drive C. leave D. forget

四、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话, 有两个多余选项

A: Excuse me. 1 I want to post a letter.

B: Yes, there is.

A: 2

B: Sure. Just go straight and turn right. It's down Garden Street on the left.

A: Is it far from here?

B: No. 3

A: By the way(顺便问一下), where is the supermarket?

B: The supermarket? It's on Eighth Avenue. 4

A: Thank you very much.

B: 5

- A. It's only fifteen minutes' walk.
B. Is there a post office in the neighborhood?
C. Where is the bank?
D. You're welcome.
E. How can I go to the post office?
F. It's next to a restaurant.
G. Can you tell me how to get there?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

A

Mineral City is an interesting place to visit. It is a beautiful small town with many old buildings. Take a walk through the center of the town on Main Street. Look first at the Mineral City Hotel. It is on the corner of Main Street and Glenn Avenue. It is about 150 years old and people will stay there. There is an interesting old building across the street from the hotel. This was a post office. Now it is a store for books and videos. There are many places to eat on Main Street. You can get lunch or dinner in one of these places. There is a park between Main Street and Oak Street. You can sit on a bench(长凳) in the park. It is nice and quiet, and you can enjoy the trees and flowers.

You can also take a walk down Glenn Avenue. Look at the old buildings and interesting little stores on this street.

1. Mineral City is _____.

- A. a big city B. a busy city
C. a beautiful town D. an old building

2. When was the Mineral City Hotel built(建造)?

- A. About 150 years ago.
B. About 250 years ago.
C. After 150 years.
D. After 250 years.

3. Where is the store for books and videos?

- A. Across the street from the hotel.
B. On the corner of Oak Street.



- C. On Glenn Avenue.
D. Behind the park.
4. There are some _____ on Glenn Avenue.
A. hotels and beautiful gardens
B. post offices and interesting shops
C. new buildings and quiet parks
D. old buildings and interesting little stores
5. Which is NOT true about the Mineral City Hotel?
A. On the corner of Main Street.
B. About 150 years old.
C. A place to eat on Main Street.
D. A beautiful and new building.

B

One day Mother looked at Tom's shoes and said, "Tom, look at your shoes. They are very dirty. You must clean them."

"Oh, Mother, but I cleaned them only yesterday," said the boy. "They are dirty now. You must clean them again." "I don't want to clean them today. Even if (即使) I clean them today, they will be dirty again tomorrow."

In the evening, Tom came back from school. He was very hungry. "Mother, give me some food to eat, please," he said.

"You had breakfast in the morning, Tom, and you had lunch at school." "But I'm hungry now." said the boy.

"Oh, hungry? But if I give you food to eat today, you will be hungry again tomorrow."

根据短文内容,判断正(T)误(F)。

- () 6. Tom's mother asked Tom to wash his shoes.
- () 7. Tom's shoes were not dirty, so he didn't clean them.
- () 8. Tom cleaned the shoes.
- () 9. Tom's mother didn't let Tom eat food at first(起初).
- () 10. Tom's mother wasn't kind to her son.

六、根据音标及句意填写单词

1. Go _____ /ə'lon/ Long Street and it's on the right.
2. We should _____ /spend/ more time on our study.
3. Turn right at the second _____ /'krɒsiŋ/ and you will see the market on your right.

4. I sit _____ /br'hænd/ the tall boy, so I can't see the blackboard clearly.
5. Sue _____ /in'dʒɔɪz/ listening to the music in her free time.

七、用括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

1. I need some _____ (money). I want to buy the beautiful coat.
2. The boy often _____ (spend) lots of time watching TV on Sundays.
3. Can I _____ (turn) right at the second crossing?
4. The hotel is near the bus station. You can find it _____ (easy).
5. Are you _____ (have) a good time in the river?

八、根据要求完成句子

1. Green Club is _____ (在……对面) my home.
2. In this photo of my family, I sit _____ my father _____ (在……之间) my mother.
3. 要去那儿,你仅仅需要穿过北街。
_____ there, you just need to cross North Street.
4. it, finish the work, takes me, to, two hours
(.) (连词成句)

5. because, like, be clean, I, in the mountains, walk, the air (.) (连词成句)

九、书面表达

假如你是王力,你的朋友 Jack 想来你家。请你根据下面的提示告诉他怎样从机场到你家。

提示:

- 出了机场乘坐 30 路公共汽车,在终点站下车;
- 沿着风华路向前走,在第二个十字路口左拐,走大约十分钟后他会看到阳光超市,你家就在超市后面。

要求:短文不少于 70 词,可适当发挥。

参考词汇:airport 机场,get off 下车

Unit 9

What does he look like?

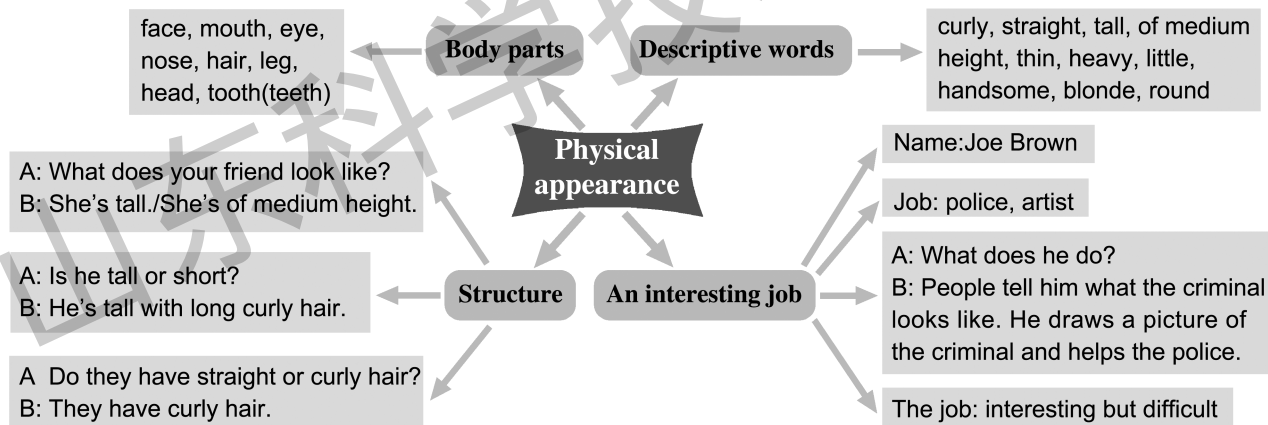
单元概要

本单元的中心话题是“Physical appearance”。重点是正确辨别、使用 be 动词以及 have/has 的用法,了解如何运用以 what 引导的疑问句和选择疑问句询问他人的外貌特征,表达人的身高、体重、发型、面部特征及其着装等外貌特征。语篇通过介绍刑侦画师的职业和经历,让学生真实感受到外貌描写在实际生活中的用途,学习准确运用目标语言描述人物,增强审美能力。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容,能运用以下单词、短语和句式来描述人们的外貌特征并学会询问人物的外貌特征,真切感受到外貌描写在生活中的实际运用。学会运用恰当的语言对人物进行外貌描写;了解中西方文化中描述人物外貌特征的不同;通过交换对不同人物的描述及看法,促进同学之间和师生之间的情感交流,增进情谊,学会在人际交往中尊重和理解别人。



文化探索

人们说孩子是父母的影子。那么,如今的你与少年时期的父母一样吗?

My father is tall and has short, grey(灰色的) hair. He wears glasses with heavy, black frames(眼镜框). But I just saw a picture of him from 1968. What a surprise(惊讶)! In the picture, he's 15 years old. He's short and he has glasses with small, round frames. He has long, yellow hair and it's really straight. He's wearing blue jeans and a T-shirt with the word "Love".

I'm 15 years old now. I'm tall and I have short hair. My hair isn't yellow. It's black. My dad thinks it's strange(奇怪的), but my friends think it's great. I wear glasses, but my glasses have bright(明亮的) black frames. They're so cool! I never wear blue jeans. I like big, baggy(宽松的) pants and long T-shirts after school. Most of my T-shirts have pictures of flowers and animals on them.



Questions:

What do your parents look like when they are young? Do you look like your father or your mother?

Section A



重点突破

1. What does he look like? 他长什么样?

【感知】(1) Doesn't she *look like* her mother?

(2) He is *like* his mother.

(3) The little cat *takes after* the old cat.

【思考】_____是“看上去像,像……,似……”,外貌特征是……”,用来询问某人的身材或长相,即外貌;_____是“像……一样”,指品德、相貌等相像(指人的个性特征);_____多用在有血缘关系的亲子之间,用在外貌上最多,也能够用在性格脾气这些内在特质上。

【运用】

(1) He _____ his mother. 他看起来像他妈妈。

(2) —What _____ he _____? 他是个什么样的人呢?

—He's friendly and kind. 他友好善良。

(3) I _____ my father. 我的行为举止像我的父亲。

2. She is of medium build, and she has long straight hair. 她中等身材,留着长直发。

【感知】(1) Who is the girl of *medium build* and with yellow curly hair?

(2) He *is of medium build*.

(3) The five people are of the same age.

【思考】_____意为“中等身材”。be of+表示年龄(_____)、大小(_____)、颜色(_____)、高度(_____)、形状(_____)、种类(_____)和方法(_____)等名词,表示“具有……”,说明主语的特征。

【运用】

(1) My friend _____ a medium build and she _____ of medium height.

- A. has; has B. is; is
C. has; is D. is; has

(2) He _____ tall and he _____ a medium build.

- A. has; is B. is; has

C. is; is

D. has; has

3. ...but I may be a little late. ……但我可能晚点儿。

【感知】(1) Today is *a little bit/a little/a bit cold*.

(2) There is *a little/a bit of water in the glass*.

(3) He walks *a little fast*.

【思考】_____表示程度,意为“稍微;有点儿”,后接形容词或副词,相当于_____,_____等。其后都可以接形容词表程度。如果接名词要注意 a little 后面直接加名词,但是_____后面才能加名词。

【运用】

(1) We need some more coffee. There is only _____ left.

- A. too many B. too much
C. a little D. a few

(2) The boy is thin but he is _____ healthy.

- A. little B. bit
C. little bit D. a little

(3) There is _____ meat in the bag. It's _____ smelly(有臭味的).

- A. a little; bit
B. a little bit; a bit
C. a bit; a little
D. a little; a little bit

4. He has brown hair and wears glasses. 他有棕色头发,还戴眼镜。

【感知】(1) Jack *is in a blue sweater*.

(2) It's cold today. Please *put on your coat*.

(3) Wei Fang *is wearing a red shirt* today.

【思考】_____意为“穿着;戴着”,强调状态。_____意为“穿上;戴上”,强调动作,是终止性动词短语,不能跟表示一段时间的状态连用。_____指穿着的状态,后面常跟颜色或服装。_____意为“使……穿着,装扮,打扮”常用结构为“dress sb. /dress sb. in+衣服”。dress 后面不能直接跟衣服。

【运用】

(1) 用 wear, put on 或 be in 的适当形式填空。

- ① It's raining. Please _____ your raincoat.
② Kate _____ a new skirt today.
③ The boy _____ black today.
④ He _____ his coat and went out.



(2) He always _____ black trousers and he always _____ his son in black.

- A. dress; dress B. wears; puts on
C. wears; dresses D. puts on; wears

(3) He likes _____ the red coat.

- A. wearing B. wears
C. putting on D. dressing



基础强化

一、单项选择

1. The woman with _____ hair wears _____.

- A. curly long; glasses
B. long curly; a glass
C. long curly; glasses
D. curly long; a glass

2. —What does your sister _____?

—She is of medium build with straight hair.

- A. look like B. looks like
C. like D. likes

3. I'm tall but my sister is of medium _____.

- A. heavy B. build C. height D. thin

4. —What do you look like?

—I'm _____.

- A. tired B. tall C. kind D. happy

5. He really knows what his family is _____, they are so poor.

- A. with B. on C. like D. up

6. —What _____ the elephant look like?

—It has a long nose.

- A. do B. does C. is D. are

7. —Does she like bananas _____ pears?

—Pears.

- A. and B. but C. or D. in

8. —Do you like running or swimming?

—_____.

- A. Yes, I do. B. No, I don't.
C. I like swimming. D. Yes, I am.

9. Linda _____ thin and _____ long hair.

- A. is; is B. has; has
C. has; is D. is; has

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. —What _____ your father _____ (look) like?

—He is of medium build.

2. —Are you going to the movie tomorrow?

—Yes, we _____ (meet) at six o'clock.

3. My friend usually _____ (wear) red skirt.

4. —What do you want to do?

—I want to have a rest _____ (one).

5. Anna looks _____ (like) her mother and she

_____ (like) reading books.

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 他长什么样?

What does he _____ ?

2. 她身材中等,头发长并且直。

She _____ ,
and she has long straight hair.

3. 是的,但我或许要晚点。

Year, but I may _____
late.

4. 他长着棕色的头发,戴眼镜。

Well, he _____ brown hair and _____
glasses.

5. 你的网友是男孩还是女孩?

_____ your e-friend a boy _____ a girl?

6. 她总是戴着一副眼镜。

She always _____
_____.

四、根据提示或图片补全问答

1. — _____

—My mother is very tall.

2. —Does your sister have long or short hair?

— _____



3. —What does the boy look like?

— _____



4. —Which man is your geography teacher?

— _____



5. — _____

—My uncle and aunt like to wear sun glasses.

五、根据所给词汇或者汉语意思及上下文完成短文

Mike and Tony 1 (去看电影) tonight. They're meeting at seven. But Mike may be 2 (一点儿) late. 3 (he) friend David is going, too. Just meet him 4 (在……前面) the cinema first. But Tony 5 (not know) him. Then Mike tells Tony what David 6 (看起来像). David



7 (长着) brown hair and 8 (戴眼镜). He isn't tall 9 short. He's 10 (中等身高).

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 2. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 4. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 6. _____ |
| 7. _____ | 8. _____ |
| 9. _____ | 10. _____ |



能力提升

六、完形填空

My name is Linda. Amy is my best friend. She 1 long straight black hair and two big black eyes. 2 nose is very small. She is beautiful. She is 3, too. Amy likes animals, so she 4 helps her grandparents take care of their cat and dog. She is also a 5 student in my class. She studies very hard 6 she often helps other students. After school, we often play together. We 7 swimming very much, so summer is our favourite season.

She is not the only 8 in her family. She has a three-year-old sister. Her name is Lucy. Lucy is a cute girl. She 9 me sister the first time I see her. She likes to play with me. 10 we go to the park, she wants to go to the park, too. When we read at home, she wants to read, too. How funny!

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. A. knows | B. sees | C. gets | D. has |
| 2. A. Its | B. His | C. Her | D. Your |
| 3. A. scary | B. cute | C. heavy | D. tired |
| 4. A. often | B. only | C. never | D. most |
| 5. A. tired | B. dangerous | | |
| C. lazy | | D. good | |
| 6. A. and | B. but | | |
| C. because | | D. if | |
| 7. A. stop | B. watch | C. like | D. remember |
| 8. A. parent | B. child | C. boy | D. student |
| 9. A. tells | B. says | C. hopes | D. calls |
| 10. A. How | B. When | C. Where | D. Why |

七、阅读理解

Molly is a 12-year-old girl. She has blonde hair and black eyes. She has a lot of friends and her best friend is a 14-year-old boy. She is always the center of attention(关注) and everyone loves

her.

Jeff is an 11-year-old boy. He has blonde hair and brown eyes. His parents don't have much time to stay with him. He spends most of his time with his grandparents. He doesn't like to talk in front of people. But he's very smart.

Joe is a 13-year-old boy. He has black hair and big eyes. He likes sports a lot. He's on the school basketball team. His friends think he can be a great basketball player in the future, but he wants to be a doctor.

- How old is Molly's best friend?
A. 11 years old. B. 12 years old.
C. 13 years old. D. 14 years old.
- Jeff spends most time with his _____.
A. friends B. parents
C. grandparents D. teachers
- What does Joe like a lot?
A. Sports. B. Music.
C. Drawing. D. Reading.
- Both Molly and Jeff have _____.
A. brown eyes B. black hair
C. blonde hair D. blue eyes
- Which of the following is TRUE?
A. Molly is shy and has few friends.
B. Jeff and Molly are of the same age.
C. Joe is on the school table tennis team.
D. Joe wants to be a doctor in the future.

八、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话, 其中有两项多余

A: Hi, Monica. 1

B: I'm writing to my pen pal(笔友).

A: 2

B: It's a girl.

A: 3

B: She's in Australia.

A: Wow! I love Australia. It's a great country with many interesting animals.

B: Yes, I also like Australia. Look at these pictures. All of these are of the scenery(风景) of Australia.

A: 4

B: Yes, let me show it to you. Er... Sorry, Tony. I can't find it.

A: It's OK. 5



B: She is not tall, and she is kind of heavy. But I think she's really cute.

- A. Where is she now?
B. Is it a boy or a girl?
C. What are you doing?
D. What does she look like?
E. What do you think of your pen pal?
F. Are you busy with your homework?
G. Do you have a picture of your pen pal?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

Section B



重点突破

1. Also, they don't always *remember well*. 而且, 他们不总是记得很好。

【感知】(1) I *remember telling* you about it.

(2) Please *remember to close* the door when you come in.

(3) *Remember to finish your homework* this evening.

【思考】remember 意为“记得, 想起”, 其反义词为_____. remember _____ sth. 意为“记得做过某事” doing 表示已完成的动作; remember _____ sth. 意为“记住去做某事”, to do 表示未做的动作。

【运用】

(1) Please remember _____ the light when you leave the room.

- A. turning off B. to turn off
C. turning down D. to turn up

(2) I remember _____ all of you at Grade Seven.

- A. to meet B. meeting
C. meet D. met

2. Many people don't always see things *the same way* so they may describe *the same person* differently. 许多人不总是用同样的方式看事情, 所以他们对同一个人的描述可能不同。

【感知】(1) Those two books *are the same*.

(2) They always ask *the same question*.

(3) My bag is *the same as yours*.

【思考】_____ 是形容词, 意为“相同的, 同一的”, 其前面往往有定冠词 the; 固定搭配有_____, 意为“和……一样”。反义词为_____, 意思是“与……不同”。_____ 是可数名词, 意为“方式, 方法”。_____ 意为“用这种、那种方式”。

【运用】

(1) His coat is _____ mine, but it is more expensive.

- A. such as B. the same as
C. different from D. same as

(2) Lucy and Lily look the same. (改为同义句)
Lucy _____ Lily.

(3) _____ people do the same thing _____.

- A. Different; different
B. Different; differently
C. Differently; different
D. Differently; differently

3. *In the end*, the real criminal is a short and heavy old man... 最后, 真正的罪犯是一个矮且胖的老人……

【感知】(1) *In the end*, Tom gets to school on time.

(2) We must finish the task *at the end of* the month.

(3) *At last*, we worked out the difficult problem.

【思考】in the end 意为“在最后, 终于”, 相当于_____ 或_____; 其反义短语为_____; 在……的末尾是_____。

【运用】

(1) 最后, Lucy 还是按时完成了作业。

_____, Lucy finishes her homework on time.

(2) They must finish the work _____ of the week.

- A. on the end B. to the end
C. in the end D. at the end

4. Another woman says, “He is tall and thin, and he has curly blond hair.” 另一位女士说: “他高且瘦, 而且他有金色卷发。”

【感知】(1) She *is* of medium height.

(2) She *has* long hair.

(3) She *wears* a pair of glasses.

【思考】描述身高、体重等特征时, 用系动词



_____；表示留头发、留胡须时，用动词
_____；表示穿着、戴着(眼镜、帽子)等时用动词
_____。

【运用】

- (1) Alice Green _____ thin and _____
long curly hair.
A. is; is B. is; has
C. has; is D. has; has
- (2) The little boy _____ glasses, and he
likes the dog _____ two big ears.
A. wears; have B. wears; with
C. wears; has D. has; has
- (3) —What does your friend look like?
—_____
A. He is thin. B. She is a kind girl.
C. She likes music. D. She has a pen.



基础强化

一、单项选择

1. —Would you like to have _____ apple?
—No, thanks. I've had two. That's enough.
A. other B. others
C. another D. the other
2. Please _____ your hands before you answer
the question.
A. put on B. put away
C. put up D. put down
3. —What does your father look like?
—He _____.
A. likes swimming B. is tall and thin
C. likes rice D. is fine
4. _____ she have a small face?
A. Does B. Do C. Are D. Is
5. Each of us _____ the teacher.
A. like B. likes C. is D. have
6. Mr. Simmons _____ medium build,
and he has yellow hair.
A. is B. is of
C. looks like D. isn't
7. —Is he heavy?
—No, he is a little bit _____.
A. tall B. thin C. short D. quiet
8. —Lucy doesn't have curly hair.
—Yes, we can say she has _____ hair.
A. black B. blonde

C. short D. straight

9. —_____
—He has big eyes and a small nose.
A. What does he look like?
B. What does he do?
C. How old is he?
D. How is he?

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. We like the _____ (sing) best because he
sings very well.
2. He can describe the same person _____ (dif-
ferent).
3. I want to be a police _____ (art) because it is
a very interesting job.
4. The local police are catching the _____ (crime).
5. I want _____ (be) a little heavy later.
6. Her hair _____ (be) long and black.
7. —Do you know what Mr. Green _____
(look) like?
—He is heavy and short.
8. He is good at _____ (play) football.
9. Wang Li _____ (have) small eyes, but I
_____ (have) big ones.
10. Please work out the problem in two _____
(way).

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

1. 我能把这则广告登在报纸上或电视上吗?
Can I put this ad _____ or
_____ TV?
2. 她经常给她的朋友们画像。
She often _____ pictures _____ her friends.
3. 我弟弟不高，而且戴着眼镜。
My brother _____ and _____.
4. 现在吃午饭还有点早。
It's _____ early for lunch.
5. 首先，你必须按时完成作业。
_____ , you must finish
your homework _____.

四、连词成句

1. all, be funny, we, Jim, because, he, really,
like (.)

2. to, your sister, do, like, dresses, wear (?)

3. long, big, Joe, hair, have, straight, brown,



and, eyes (.)

4. look like, let, tell, what, he, you, me (.)

5. always, see, many, things, don't, people, the same, way (.)

五、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1 (look) at this picture! This is my friend Jim. He 2 (be) of medium build. He 3 (have) long, curly hair. He 4 (not wear) glasses. He likes 5 (play) sports. Look! He 6 (play) soccer with his friends.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

六、猜猜“我”是谁

请用 3~5 句英语描述你身边的同学、老师或是大家都熟知的名人,看看同学们能否迅速猜出你描述的人物。



能力提升

七、完形填空

Dear Li Lei,

Thank you for your e-mail. I'd like to tell you something 1 one of my good friends. His name is Peter. He'll 2 China next week, but he knows 3 about the country. Can you help me meet him at the 4? The plane is arriving in Beijing at 3:00 pm next Tuesday. 5 you never see him, I'll e-mail his 6 to you. But now, I want to make a short description. Don't be so 7 at his strong build when you see him. He's of medium height. He has short curly brown hair and two blue eyes. He has good sight(视力), so he 8 wear glasses. To make you find him 9, he'll wear a T-shirt with the word "China". He can 10 a little Chinese, so you may talk with him. Could you help me look after him? Thanks a lot!

Yours,
John

1. A. with B. in C. about D. on
2. A. come B. visit C. get D. go
3. A. nothing B. something C. everything D. anything
4. A. stop B. park C. airport D. school
5. A. After B. Before C. Because D. When
6. A. look B. photo C. letter D. card
7. A. surprised B. bored C. interested D. relaxed
8. A. doesn't B. don't C. hasn't D. isn't
9. A. heavily B. really C. easily D. quickly
10. A. speak B. say C. talk D. sing

八、阅读理解

Miss Lee is only twenty-one. She is tall and thin, and she has brown, long hair. She likes children and her teaching work. From Monday to Friday she stays at school and gives the children classes. She has much work to do, but she often plays games with her students after school. The children like her very much. On Sunday she drives her car to her father's house and stays with her father and mother. Sometimes she goes to see her friends on Sunday. She drives back to school on Monday morning. She likes singing, dancing and swimming. She is a nice teacher.

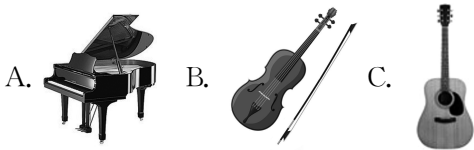
1. Miss Lee is a _____ teacher.
A. very good B. very old
C. good English D. good Chinese
2. Which of the following is right?
A. She has no work to do and often plays with the children.
B. She plays with the children from Monday to Sunday.
C. She likes her students and plays games with them.
D. She always works, but doesn't play at all.
3. She goes and sees her friends _____.
A. every day B. on Sunday
C. on Saturday D. on Friday
4. Miss Lee goes home _____.
A. in her car B. on a bus
C. on foot D. by her car
5. Miss Lee likes _____.
A. driving B. cooking
C. running D. teaching

单元评估

一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What time does the woman go to bed?
A. At eight. B. At nine. C. At ten.
2. What can Jenny do?



3. What does the English teacher look like?
A. 短、直发,戴眼镜
B. 长、卷发,戴眼镜
C. 长、直发,不戴眼镜
4. Where is the man's cat?
A. On the sofa. B. Under the chair.
C. In the bed.
5. How does the woman go to work?
A. By bike. B. On foot.
C. By subway.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. What is Tony going to do tonight?
A. Watch TV. B. See a movie.
C. Do homework.
7. What does David look like?
A. Tall. B. Medium height.
C. Short.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. What are they going to do in Moscow?
A. Visit museums. B. Go to the movies.
C. Go to the beaches.
9. How are they going there?
A. By train. B. By plane. C. By ship.
10. How long are they going to stay there?
A. Two days. B. A week. C. A month.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

My family	Appearance & personality(外貌性格)
Father	He is of medium 11. _____.
Mother	She is tall with a 12. _____ face. She likes watching TV and 13. _____ jokes.
I	I have short 14. _____ hair.
Sister	She is good-looking. She never 15. _____ talking.

二、单项选择

1. —Is your uncle _____ actor?
—Yes. He's a great actor.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
2. To read the words, my grandma has to wear her _____.
A. hat B. sweater C. glasses D. shoes
3. The girl _____ long hair is our new classmate.
A. in B. with C. on D. of
4. Peter stops _____ and goes to bed at 9 p. m.
A. watching TV B. watch TV
C. to watch TV D. watches TV
5. Gina is new. She's _____ shy so she has no friends.
A. a little B. little C. a lot of D. a lot
6. My aunt is too _____, so she wants to be slim(苗条的).
A. heavy B. tall C. short D. thin
7. —What about _____ shopping on Sunday?
—Good idea!
A. go B. goes C. to go D. going
8. —Tom, what does your new friend look like?
—_____
A. He is thin but strong.
B. She is a kind girl.
C. She likes music.
D. She has a football.
9. —Your hair is very beautiful.
—_____
A. No, it isn't. B. Not at all.



- C. Thank you. D. You're welcome.
10. —Judy, don't forget _____ the classroom after school.
—No problem, sir.
- A. clean B. to clean
C. cleaning D. are cleaning

三、完形填空

David is from China. He is very good at his lessons, but he is also very 1. He doesn't talk too much with us because he thinks that we are so 2. When he came into our classroom for the first time, he was so frightened(受惊的) that he cried out. That's because of our 3. For example, his hair is short, 4 and straight, but ours are all different from his. Jim's hair is yellow and much 5 than his. Dave's hair is curly and brown. Kitty's hair is blonde. Our builds and clothes seem to be strange(奇怪的) in his 6, too. Peter is a boy. He is tall and thin, but he 7 a colorful T-shirt. At first, he didn't have many friends because he couldn't 8 English very well. Lately, 9 the teacher's help, he made more friends. Now he is our "Kung Fu boy". We love kung fu very much. So he 10 kung fu with us every weekend.

1. A. shy B. handsome
C. smart D. friendly
2. A. same B. beautiful
C. different D. relaxed
3. A. faces B. pictures
C. ages D. looks
4. A. yellow B. brown C. black D. blonde
5. A. heavier B. taller C. longer D. thinner
6. A. ears B. eyes C. hands D. head
7. A. wears B. dresses C. puts D. keeps
8. A. say B. speak C. tell D. talk
9. A. in B. with C. on D. for
10. A. plays B. takes C. does D. brings

四、补全对话

- A: I hear that you make a new friend.
B: Yes. She's from America.
A: 1
B: She is a little bit thin.
A: Is she tall?
B: 2 She's of medium height.

- A: Does she wear glasses?
B: 3 She always wears a pair of glasses.
A: 4
B: Yes. She has long hair.
A: 5
B: She can speak English and a little Chinese.

1. A. What does she like?
B. What does she look like?
C. Why does he like sports?
D. When does he go home?
2. A. No, she isn't. B. Yes, she is.
C. Yes, she does. D. No, she doesn't.
3. A. Yes, she does. B. No, she doesn't.
C. Yes, she is. D. No, she isn't.
4. A. Does she have long hair?
B. Does she have short hair?
C. What does she ask for?
D. Why does she have short hair?
5. A. Does she speak English?
B. What language can she speak?
C. What language can't she speak?
D. Can she speak Chinese?

五、阅读理解

Aren't you glad that mothers and fathers give names to their children? Names are the quickest and easiest and the friendliest way to say who's who. Another nice thing about names is that they do not change(变化) as people do. Yesterday Mary's hair was long. Today her hair is short. But her name is still Mary. On his birthday Uncle Tom didn't have moustache(胡子). At Christmas time he did. But his name is still Tom.

People are always changing a little or a lot. But people's names are still the same. A name sometimes says something nice about someone. Girls' names often come from words meaning "pretty", "happy", "loving"... Boys' names are often borrowed from words which mean "strong" and "brave". Do you know how your name comes?

1. _____ usually give names to the children.
A. Parents B. Friends
C. Teachers D. Family members
2. A man's name _____.
A. is always changing B. changes as he does
C. is not changing D. changes at any time

3. Names are the _____ and the friendliest way to say who is who.
A. slowest B. hardest
C. most difficult D. easiest
4. If there is a word “brave” in a boy’s name, that means his parents wish him _____.
A. to have a strong body
B. to be stronger when he grows up
C. to have a name for love
D. not to be afraid of anybody
5. In the last paragraph(段), the underlined word “borrowed” means _____.
A. 使用 B. 借用 C. 拿走 D. 带来

六、根据音标、汉语意思及句意填写单词

1. Lily’s hair is _____/’kɜ:li/ not straight.
2. He is a _____/tə:l/ and thin person, wearing a pair of glasses.
3. Let’s go to _____/’sinəmə/. I want to see the movie.
4. Jim’s father is of _____ (中等) build.
5. The police artist can _____ (描述) pictures of different criminals.

七、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Linda’s mother is of medium _____ (high).
2. Remember _____ (close) the door when you leave the room.
3. My teacher dislikes wearing _____ (glass).
4. It’s snowing heavily. I feel _____ (real) cold.
5. Eric, stop _____ (put) your shoes on the chair. They’re dirty.

八、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. he, hair, wears, has, brown, and, glasses (.)

2. —What does the girl look like?

3. —_____ (tall or short)
—He is short.
4. my, very, favorite teacher, be handsome (.)



九、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

My name is Paul. I’m an actor. I have short blonde hair. I’m not very tall or heavy. (1)I wear

cool glasses when I go out.
I’m Karen. I work in a restaurant. I look like my mother. I have big eyes and long curly hair. I’m tall and a little thin. I like meeting people.
I’m Peter. I’m a bank clerk. My eyes are small. My hair is short and curly. I’m short and a bit heavy.
I’m Cindy. I’m a teacher. I always wear glasses. (2) I’m not heavy or thin. I have long black hair. I’m fun and my students all like me.

1. What’s Paul’s job?

2. What does Karen look like?

3. 请把文中(1)处句子译成汉语。

4. 请写出(2)处句子的同义句。

5. Who is a bank clerk?

十、书面表达

最近我们班来了两位新老师, 请根据下面表格中提供的信息, 用英语描述一下两位新老师。短文约 70 词。

名字	Miss Green	Mr. White
年龄及国籍	23, 英国	30, 美国
学科	英语	数学
外貌	瘦瘦的, 中等个子, 留着黄色的卷发, 带着太阳镜	有点胖, 有点矮, 但非常幽默, 深受学生喜爱
爱好	读书, 跳舞, 下棋	打篮球, 练中国功夫, 喜欢讲笑话

Unit 10

I'd like some noodles.

单元概要

本单元话题是“Food”，围绕着对食物进行询问和对点餐进行训练。重点是与食物相关的各种词汇、点餐时常用的功能句型、不定代词在不同句式中的用法以及食物的“可数”与“不可数”的区分。通过展现在餐馆点餐的场景，并通过这一场景呈现各种常见食物的名称，引入与点餐相关的句型，以及常见的“大份、中份、小份”的词汇及语言表达。介绍世界各地的人们在庆祝生日时的不同饮食文化，渗透中西文化比较和跨文化理解的内容。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式描述不同种类的食物，并能正确区分可数名词与不可数名词；能够正确运用 would like、不定代词 some, any 和 what 引导的特殊疑问句对食物进行询问，并学会用英语点餐。了解不同国家的生日饮食习惯，能够从跨文化视角认识食物所代表的文化意义，学会珍惜食物，合理饮食，培养科学的餐饮理念。

A: What kind of noodles would you like?
B: I'd like beef noodles, please.

A: What size would you like?
B: I'd like a large/medium/small bowl, please.

A: Would you like a large bowl?
B: Yes, please./No, thanks.

A: Is there any meat in the tomato and egg soup?
B: No, there isn't any./No, there's no meat.

Ordering food

Food

Kinds of food

Countable nouns:
tomatoes, potatoes, carrots

Uncountable nouns:
mutton, beef, meat, milk,
soup, green tea, orange
juice, porridge

Countable and uncountable
nouns:
chicken, salad, ice-cream,
cabbage, cake



文化探索

随着生活节奏的加快，越来越多的人喜欢吃快餐。你知道哪个国家的人最喜欢吃快餐吗？

A large number of people in the world eat fast food. Whenever you go into a fast food restaurant, you can see lots of people enjoying their meals there. In which country do people like fast food best? From a survey(调查) in 2018, the English people are the world's biggest fans(狂热爱好者) of fast food and the French are the least(最少的) interested in quick meals.

The survey of thirteen countries shows 45% of the English people say they can't give up(放弃) fast food because it's delicious. And 44% of Americans and 37% of Canadians say the same.

The French are proud(自豪的) of their delicious cuisine(饭菜). They don't like fast food. 81% of them think it is unhealthy. It is followed(跟随) by 75% of the Japanese.

How about the you? How often do you have hamburgers or fried chicken? It doesn't matter whether



(是否) you like Western fast food or Chinese food. The most important thing is to keep a balanced diet(日常饮食).

Questions:

In which country are people the most or least interested in fast food? What do you think of the fast food?

Section A



重点突破

1. I'd like some noodles. 我想要一些面条。

【感知】(1) My brother *would like a new book*.

(2) We *would like to watch* a movie.

(3) My parents *would like me to visit* my grandparents with them on the weekend.

【思考】would like 的意思是“想要,愿意”,相当于动词_____。基本用法如下: would like sth. 意为“想要某物”; would like _____ sth. 意为“想要做某事”; would like sb. _____ sth. 意为“想要某人做某事”。在一般疑问句中,要把 would 提到主语前,否定句则直接在 would 后面加_____。

【运用】

(1) —Would you like some noodles? (作肯定和否定回答)

—Yes, _____. / No, _____.

(2) I'd like _____ (go) fishing with my father this Sunday.

(3) The two boys want ice-cream, but the girl _____ some juice.

- A. want B. would like
C. look like D. is like

2. I'd like beef and tomato noodles, please. 我想要西红柿牛肉面。

【感知】(1) I want to eat *some beef* for dinner.

(2) It's good for our health to eat more vegetables. And I like the *tomatoes* best.

(3) Please give me *a cup of tea*.

【思考】(1) 名词有_____名词和_____名词之分,可数名词有单复数之分,单数用 a/an 修饰,复数用 some, many, lots of 等词修饰。还有一些单复数同形的可数名词,如: sheep, deer. 名词变复数除了规则的变化以外,有些词形发生变化,如: child—_____; man—_____. 不可数名词无单复数之分,可以用 some, lots

of, much 等词修饰。作主语时,谓语动词用_____形式,计量不可数名词常用“不定冠词或数词+量词+_____+不可数名词”,如: _____一杯茶。

(2) 可数名词作定语时,通常用单数形式,例如: beef and _____ noodles 西红柿牛肉面。但是 man 和 woman 作定语修饰可数名词时,要变为复数,如: 10 _____ doctors 十位男医生; many _____ teachers 很多女教师。

【运用】

(1) There are some _____ (potato) on the table.

(2) He would like _____ (tomato) noodles.

(3) 我们需要两杯牛奶。

We need _____ milk.

(4) There is an apple tree and a woman cleaner in the picture. (变为复数句)

There are _____ trees and _____ cleaners in the picture.

3. What kind of noodles would you like? 你想要哪种面条?

【感知】(1) Pandas are *kind of cute*.

(2) It's a *kind of fruit*.

(3) There are all *kinds of kites* in the sky.

【思考】kind 可以作名词或形容词。作名词时表示种类,如: _____ 各种各样的;作形容词时,意为“善良的,和蔼的”。_____意为“有点,些许”,相当于 a little.

【运用】

(1) I like mutton noodles. (对画线部分提问)

_____ of noodles do you like?

(2) 动物园里有各种各样的动物。

There are _____ animals in the zoo.

(3) 这个小孩有点可爱。

This boy is _____ lovely.

4. What size would you like? 你想要多大份的?

【感知】(1) *What size shoes* do you wear?

(2) —*What size of noodles* would you like?

—I'd like a *large bowl of noodles*.



【思考】what size 用来询问物体的____、尺寸,其中 size 为名词,意为“尺码,大小”。点餐时在询问多大份时,常用“a small/____/large bowl”来回答。

【运用】

- (1) —What _____ bowl of noodles would your father like?
—He'd like a large bowl.
A. size B. big
C. small D. kind of
- (2) —What size pizza would you like?
—I'd like _____ one.
A. large B. a large of
C. a large D. large size



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及汉语提示填写单词

- We have large, _____ (中等的) and small bowls. What size would you like?
- Is there anything _____ /'speʃəl/ today?
- The man likes _____ /'kæbɪdʒ/ and egg noodles for lunch.
- May I take your _____ (点菜)?
- I _____ /wʊd/ like to go camping on weekend.

二、单项选择

- There is little _____ in the fridge. Let's go to the market to buy some.
A. eggs B. vegetables C. fruit D. snacks
- Would you like _____ soccer with us?
—Sure. I like _____ soccer very much.
A. to play; playing B. playing; playing
C. play; to play D. to play; play
- I'd like _____ dumplings.
A. medium B. a medium
C. a medium bowl D. a medium bowl of
- Would you like some orange juice?
—_____
A. Yes, please. B. Yes, I would.
C. No, I don't. D. Yes, I wouldn't.
- I would like _____ in my noodles. Vegetables are my favorite.
A. tomatoes and onions
B. beef and mutton
C. fish and cabbages
D. eggs and chicken

- Ann, what kind of noodles would you like?
—I'd like _____ noodles.
A. cabbage and beef B. a large bowl of
C. hamburgers with D. soup, rice and
- What vegetables _____ he like?
—He'd like carrots.
A. will B. does C. would D. is
- _____ bowl of porridge do you want?
A. Which one B. What kind
C. What size D. How many
- What would you like to have _____ lunch?
A. to B. at C. in D. for
- Hello! May I _____ your order?
A. make B. take C. read D. write

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空

- There _____ (be) some ice-cream and apples on the table.
- Can I help you? —I'd like two large _____ (bowl) of noodles.
- Julie would like _____ (watch) TV.
- We have four _____ (kind) of noodles in our restaurant.
- Is there _____ (some) beef for lunch?
—No, there isn't.

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

- 您要什么面?
What _____ noodles would you like?
- 您可以点餐了吗?
May I _____?
- 我们还想要宫保鸡丁和麻婆豆腐外带米饭。
We _____ gongbao chicken and some mapo tofu with rice.
- 我想要有胡萝卜的牛肉面。
I'd like _____ noodles _____ carrots.
- 你妈妈穿多大码的鞋子?
_____ of shoes does your mother wear?

五、根据图片或提示补全问答

- What would you like?
—_____
- _____
—Yes, there is some meat in the soup.
- Would you like beef or chicken with rice?
—_____





4. — _____ (kind)
— I'd like chicken and beef noodles.
5. — _____ (size)
— Large, please.

六、连词成句

1. or, he, onions, not like, meat (.)

2. some fish, would, you, like (?)

3. like, and, my mother, pancakes, dumplings (.)

4. like, gongbao chicken, would, and, we, also
mapo tofu (.)



能力提升

七、完形填空

My father is forty years old. He works in a
1 He is a waiter. He is very 2 every day.
He goes to work very early and 3 home very
late. Our home is a bit far from his workplace, so
he usually 4 a bus to work. He has a lot of
things 5 every day. There are many people in
the restaurant every day, and there are more peo-
ple 6 Saturdays and Sundays. People like to
come to the restaurant 7 it has some special
dumplings every day. The bowls have three 8
—small, medium, and large. If you don't have
enough money with you, you may 9 them next
time. My father is 10 to everyone, so people
like to talk with him.

1. A. hotel B. restaurant
C. bank D. school
2. A. lazy B. happy C. heavy D. busy
3. A. gets B. starts C. has D. cleans
4. A. brings B. buys C. takes D. sells
5. A. do B. to do C. does D. doing
6. A. on B. at C. and D. in
7. A. and B. but C. so D. because
8. A. ages B. prices C. sizes D. colors
9. A. ask B. order C. eat D. wait
10. A. bad B. clever C. shy D. friendly

八、阅读理解

Alan is eleven years old. And it is his first
time to come to China to visit his grandparents.
Today is Sunday. It's his eleventh birthday. He

gets up early and he wants to buy some food for his
birthday party in the afternoon.

He sees a big bowl of noodles on the table
when he comes out of his bedroom. It is a bowl of
tomato and egg noodles. Alan usually eats bread
for breakfast in America. He likes tomato and egg
noodles, but he wants to know why Grandma
cooks noodles this morning.

"It is your birthday today," says Grandma. "In
China, people believe eating noodles on your birthday
means you can live longer. We call noodles *changshou*
noodles. I hope you live a happy and healthy life."

"Thanks, Grandma. I think it's the first spe-
cial gift I get for my birthday," says Alan.

1. How old is Alan?
A. He is 10. B. He is 11.
C. He is 12. D. He is 14.
2. When is Alan's birthday party?
A. On Saturday morning.
B. On Saturday afternoon.
C. On Sunday afternoon.
D. On Sunday morning.
3. What does Alan see on the table?
A. A big bowl. B. A bowl of noodles.
C. A tomato. D. A birthday cake.
4. What does Alan often have for breakfast
in America?
A. Bread and milk. B. Fruit and milk.
C. Egg noodles. D. Bread.
5. From the passage, we know that _____.
A. Alan's mother cooks noodles for him
B. Alan thinks his grandma's gift for him
is special
C. Alan's grandma doesn't want to have the
birthday party
D. Alan doesn't think his grandma's gift for him
is special

Section B



重点突破

1. I don't like onions, green tea or porridge. 我不喜
欢洋葱、绿茶和粥。

【感知】(1) I like apples and bananas.

(2) I don't like tea or coffee.



(3) Do you like noodles *or* dumplings?

(4) Get up, *or* you will be late.

【思考】*or* 意为“或者, 还是, 否则”。当“或者”讲时, *or* 是并列连词, 用于否定句中, 相当于肯定句中的 ; 当“还是”讲时, 用于 疑问句中; 当“否则”讲时, 常用于 句中。

【运用】

(1) —I don't like mutton beef.
—I don't like mutton, I like beef a lot.

A. and; but B. and; and
C. or; but D. but; or

(2) I like water and coffee very much. (改为否定句)

I like water coffee.

(3) —What would you like, juice tea?
—Tea, please.

A. and B. or C. but

(4) Hurry up! you will miss the bus.

A. And B. Or C. But

2. All of these birthday foods may be *different*, but the ideas are the *same*. 所有的生日食物可能是不同的, 但是想法是相同的。

【感知】(1) His backpack *is different* from mine.

(2) My best friend *is the same as* me.

(3) There are many *differences* between bikes and e-bikes.

【思考】*different* 意为“不同的”, 常用短语是 be different , 意为“与……不同”; *different* 的反义词是 , 意为“相同的”。常用短语有 the same , 意为“和……相同”。*different* 的名词是 , 意为“不同, 差异”。

【运用】

(1) He is very smart and his ideas are always different (as/from) other ideas.

(2) This kind of fruit is different from that one. (改为同义句)

This kind of fruit isn't that one.

(3) I can't find out the (different) between the two problems.

3. The number of candles is the person's age. 蜡烛的数量就是这个人的年龄。

【感知】(1) The little boy can count *numbers* from one to ten.

(2) The number of the students in our class is 48.

(3) A number of students are playing soccer.

【思考】the number of 意为“……的数量”, 后跟可数名词复数, 作主语时, 谓语动词用 ; a number of 意为“许多……”, 后跟可数名词复数, 作主语时, 谓语动词用 。

【运用】

(1) tigers in the world has reduced (减少) in the last fifty years.

A. A number of B. The number
C. The number of D. A number

(2) The number of people in the city (be) about seven million now.

(3) A number of teachers (be) teaching in our school.

4. The birthday person must *make a wish* and *blow out the candles*. 过生日的人必须许愿并且吹蜡烛。

【感知】(1) I want to *make a wish* on my birthday.

(2) The card brings *best wishes* to me.

(3) I *wish to take* a trip in summer.

(4) His parents *wish him to be* a doctor.

(5) I *wish* you a happy birthday.

【思考】*wish* 可以作名词或 。作名词时, 意为“愿望”, a wish 意为“许个愿望”; 作动词时, 可以跟不定式。wish sth. 意为“希望做某事”; 可以跟从句, 用作 wish sb. to do sth. 或 wish sb. sth.。

【运用】

(1) The girl wishes ice-cream, but her mother doesn't want her to eat it.

A. eating B. to eat C. eat D. eats

(2) —What are you going to do when you grow up?

—A singer, but my parents wish me a teacher.

A. am B. to be
C. will be D. be



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及汉语提示填写单词

1. In the north of China, people usually eat /'dʌmplɪŋz/ at the Spring Festival.

2. I w you a happy birthday and a good life.

3. I like eating f very much, and sometimes I catch (抓) some in the river.

4. Many young people like the movie star. He's very /'pɒpjələ/.



5. All of these birthday foods may be _____
/'dɪfərənt/, but the ideas are the same.

二、单项选择

- Would you like noodles _____ mutton in it?
A. with B. of C. has D. have
- They would like _____ to the zoo first.
A. go B. to go C. goes D. going
- Please don't _____ the candles. It's too dark in the room.
A. blow up B. put out
C. blow out D. take out
- What _____ would you like, sir?
—A small bowl, please.
A. price B. time C. size D. height
- The number of the _____ in our school _____ 200.
A. teacher; is B. teachers; are
C. teachers; is D. teacher; are
- Would you like _____ apples?
—Yes, please.
A. a B. many C. some D. any
- I don't like hamburgers, chicken _____ mutton.
A. and B. but C. or D. with
- Skating is getting _____ now. Many people like to skate.
A. important B. difficult
C. popular D. funny
- Ben, would you like to play football with us?
—_____, but I have to wash the dishes first.
A. No, I can't B. I don't want to
C. Yes, please D. I'd love to
- Sorry. There is only _____ soup in my bowl.
A. a little B. any C. many D. much

三、从括号中选择恰当的单词或词组填空

- _____ (A large number/The large number) of parents hold parties for their kids' birthdays.
- If you work hard, your wish will _____ (come true/come out).
- I hope this present can bring good _____ (luck/lucky) to you.
- What would people like to eat _____ (on/at) their birthday?
- Don't _____ (cut up/blow out) the candles, or we can't see the things in the room.

四、连词成句

- do, do, your birthday, what, or, you, on, eat (?)

- the child, lucky, is, with, the candy (.)
- luck, and, life, symbol, are, they, good, of (.)
- different, birthday, all, the, may, food, be (.)
- birthday cakes, with, people, candles, countries, in, have, many (.)

五、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

- 蜡烛的数量是这个人的年龄。
_____ of _____ is the person's age.
- 在中国,生日时吃蛋糕正变得流行。
In China, it is _____ to have cakes on the birthday.
- 如果他或她一口气把蜡烛全部吹灭的话,许的愿望便会成真。
If he or she _____ all the candles in one go, the wish will _____.
- 他们从不把面条切碎因为长面条是长寿的象征。
They never _____ the noodles because the long noodles are a symbol of long life.
- 它们给过生日的人带来好运。
They bring _____ to the birthday person.

六、看图写话

今天是 Gina 和 Lili 的生日,她们俩一起过生日。请用 4~5 句话描述一下她们俩生日吃了什么? 做了什么? 朋友们为她们做了什么?



能力提升

七、完形填空

Do you want to stay healthy? Let me tell you

1 to have a healthy diet.

In the morning, you can eat some bread,



cakes and eggs. You should drink a glass of milk. It's very important for you because it can 2 you much energy(能量). It 3 good for you to go to school or to work without breakfast.

You must feel very 4 at lunchtime. So you should have something good 5 lunch. You can have some fish or chicken. 6, such as carrots and tomatoes, are also very important because they can keep you healthy.

In the evening, you must be tired. You should eat things 7 noodles or others with some vegetables. But remember not to eat 8 because you can't do much exercise in the evening. Before going to bed, you can have a glass of milk. It can 9 you sleep well.

At last, you should eat more 10. Here's a proverb(谚语): An apple a day keeps the doctor away.

1. A. when B. how C. what D. where
2. A. get B. spend C. give D. take
3. A. does B. doesn't C. is D. isn't
4. A. happy B. sad C. hungry D. busy
5. A. to B. for C. of D. with
6. A. Vegetables B. Meat C. Fruit D. Snacks
7. A. as B. like C. with D. in
8. A. many too B. too many C. too much D. much too
9. A. turn B. start C. improve D. help
10. A. apples B. oranges C. bananas D. pears

八、阅读理解

I'm Anna. Today is Sunday. I don't need to go to school. I like cooking with my mom on Sundays. I can cook noodles, cakes and fish well.

After finishing my homework, I find there is

little food in the fridge(冰箱). So I go to the supermarket with my mom. There are many kinds of food in the supermarket. My mom likes Chinese food very much. She buys dumplings and some meat balls. I enjoy Western(西方的) food, so I buy some vegetables and bread. I want to have hamburgers. We also buy some bananas. They look very good.

It is 122 yuan all together. I give the saleswoman(女店员) 150 yuan and she gives me 38 yuan. She makes a mistake! I give her 10 yuan and tell her why. She thanks me and she says I am a good girl. Then I go home with my mom. I am very happy. I get the food I like and I do something good.

1. What is Anna good at?
A. Cooking beef. B. Cooking cakes.
C. Making meat balls. D. Making hamburgers.
2. Why do Anna and her mom go shopping?
A. They are free.
B. There is little food in the fridge.
C. Anna wants some Western food.
D. Anna's mom wants some Chinese food.
3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
A. The bananas. B. The vegetables.
C. The hamburgers. D. The dumplings.
4. What does the underlined word "mistake" mean in Chinese?
A. 训练 B. 技巧
C. 错误 D. 危险
5. Which of the following is TRUE?
A. Anna gets 28 yuan at last.
B. Anna likes cooking with her father.
C. Anna's mom is good at cooking Chinese food.
D. The saleswoman thanks Anna because she buys many things.

单元评估

一、听力测试

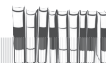
(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What's the weather like in Beijing?

- A. It's raining. B. It's snowing.
C. It's sunny.

2. Which fruit does the man like best?

- A.  B.  C. 



3. What is Tom doing?



4. What size does Monica want?

A. Large. B. Medium. C. Small.

5. What kind of noodles would Jack like?

A. Beef and tomato noodles.
B. Beef and egg noodles.
C. Egg and tomato noodles.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. What kind of dumplings would the man like?

A. Beef. B. Mutton. C. Fish.

7. What size would the woman like?

A. Large. B. Medium. C. Small.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. What is Mike doing?

A. Doing homework.
B. Watching a show.
C. Playing basketball.

9. How do they go to the zoo?

A. On foot. B. By bike. C. By bus.

10. When will they meet at the zoo?

A. At 2:00. B. At 2:15. C. At 2:50.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

The Noodle House		
Special 1	11. _____ and tomato	¥5
Special 2	mutton and 12. _____	13. ¥ _____
Special 3	14. _____ and carrot	15. ¥ _____

二、单项选择

1. —Would you like to join me in making cakes tomorrow?
—_____

A. It doesn't matter. B. Don't worry.
C. You're welcome. D. I'd love to.

2. —I want to cook beef for dinner. _____ beef do I need?
—Half a kilo is OK.

A. How many B. How much
C. How heavy D. How large

3. —We have some _____ today.

—Wow! How cheap!

A. specials B. orders
C. menus D. dishes

4. —What _____ of sweater do you want?
—Small.

A. color B. size C. kind D. bowl

5. —Would you like _____ tea with ice in it?
—Yes, please.

A. some B. any C. many D. much

6. —What are you doing?

—Oh, I'm helping mom _____ the meat.

A. eat out B. go out C. cut up D. put up

7. —Would you like some _____ to eat?

—Just a little, please.

A. chicken B. orange C. carrots D. apples

8. —_____ are these apples?

—10 *yuan* a kilo.

A. What size B. How much
C. How old D. How many

9. You should make a wish before you _____ the candles on your birthday cake.

A. come out B. blow out
C. go out D. look out

10. —What do you think of Alice?

—She's a lively child and _____ with us.

A. free B. popular
C. different D. busy

三、完形填空

A large number of people in the world eat 1 food. Whenever (无论何时) you go into a fast food restaurant, you can 2 lots of people enjoying their meals there. How do you know in which country people like fast food best?

The 3 people are the world's biggest fans of fast food, while the French are the 4 interested in quick meals, according to a survey (调查) done last year.

The survey of thirteen countries 5 45% of the English people say they can't give up fast food because it's 6. And 44% of Americans and 37% of Canadians say the 7.

The French, proud of (以……为豪) their delicious cuisine, don't like fast food. 81% of them



think it is 8, followed by 75% of Japanese.

How about the Chinese? How often do you have hamburgers or fried chicken? It doesn't matter whether(是否) you like Western fast food 9 Chinese food. The most important thing is to keep a 10 diet(日常饮食).

1. A. slow B. fast C. hard D. sweet

2. A. look B. read C. watch D. see

3. A. English B. French

C. Japanese D. Chinese

4. A. most B. biggest C. least D. best

5. A. plays B. shows C. talks D. enjoys

6. A. salty B. delicious

C. terrible D. bad

7. A. same B. different

C. common D. usual

8. A. healthy B. unhealthy

C. good D. helpful

9. A. and B. but C. or D. still

10. A. quick B. balanced

C. straight D. special

四、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话

A: You don't look well. 1

B: I have a bad cold and my head really hurts.

A: Sorry to hear that. 2

B: Yes, I have. The doctor said I had to lie down and rest. I'm a little bit hungry now. Could you please order some noodles for me?

A: 3

C: Hello, House of Noodles!

A: Hello! I want to order some beef noodles, please.

C: Sure. What size would you like?

A: Small.

C: 4

A: No, that's all.

C: 5

A: 11 North Street and my phone number is 349-8577.

C: Thank you. That'll be 15 yuan.

A. Anything else?

B. What's the matter?

C. With pleasure.

D. What's your address and phone number?

E. Have you seen a doctor?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

In our city, there is a big zoo. There are a lot of animals in it.

Mona is an Australian koala. She is seven years old. She is very cute. She likes sleeping during the day. But at night she gets up and eats leaves(叶子). Mona doesn't drink water for months. But she is healthy, because she can get water from the leaves.

Here is a big house. A lion lives in it. His name is Gerry. He is from Africa. Meat is his favorite food. Gerry is very lazy. He sleeps for 20 hours every day. Today is Gerry's eighth birthday. The workers in the zoo have a birthday party for him.

This is a big elephant. His name is Johnny. He is from India. He's eleven years old. He has bad eyesight(视力). He likes to eat grass. He's friendly and clever. People can teach him to do things for them.

Tuantuan is a cute panda. She is five years old. She's from China. She is very beautiful, but she's very shy, so please keep quiet. She likes eating bamboo(竹子) and drinking water. She relaxes 10 hours every day.

1. How old is Gerry?

A. 5. B. 7. C. 8. D. 11.

2. The _____ can't see things very well.

A. lion B. elephant
C. koala D. panda

3. Who can help people to do things?

A. Mona. B. Gerry.
C. Tuantuan. D. Johnny.

4. These animals come from _____ places.

A. two B. three
C. four D. five

5. Which of the following is TRUE?

A. Mona can get water from the leaves, so she doesn't drink water for months.

B. Gerry doesn't like to sleep, but he likes to eat meat.

C. Johnny is small. He only likes to eat meat.

D. Tuantuan likes to eat bamboo, but she doesn't like to drink water.



六、根据音标、汉语提示及句意填写单词

1. China is a _____ /lɑ:dʒ/ country with long history.
2. What _____ /saɪz/ of shoes would you like?
3. I like the _____ /'speʃəl/ in the restaurant.
4. The _____ (数量) of the candles is the person's age.
5. Please _____ out (吹灭) the candles on the cake.

七、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. There are some _____ (different) between the two pictures.
2. How _____ (luck) you are! You get the last ticket to the concert.
3. I want to make two _____ (wish) and I think they will come true one day.
4. He _____ (blow) out all the candles after he makes a birthday wish.
5. These students are from different _____ (country).

八、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. there, some meat, is, the tomato and egg, soup, in (?)

2. —What kind of noodles would you like?
—_____ (我想要牛肉面)
3. —What size would you like?
—_____ (我要大碗).
4. candles, the number of, the person's, age, is (.)

5. to, it, is, get popular, have cake, on birthday (.)

九、任务型阅读

阅读短文, 根据要求完成文后题目。

Mr. Jones and Mr. Brown work in the same office. One day Mr. Jones says to Mr. Brown, "I will have a small party at our house on Monday evening. Would you and your wife like to come?"

Mr. Brown says, "Thank you very much. I'd love to, but let me ask my wife first." So Mr. Brown

goes to the other room and telephones his wife.

(1) Then he comes back and looks very worried.

"What's the matter?" asks Mr. Jones. "Is your wife there at home?"

"No," answers Mr. Brown. "She isn't there. My small son answers the telephone. I say to him, 'Is your mother there, David?' and he answers 'No, she isn't in the house.' 'Where is she?' I ask, 'She is somewhere outside.' 'What's she doing?' 'She is looking for me.'"

1. When will Mr. Jones have a party?

2. Who answers the phone?

3. 请把(1)处句子译成汉语。

4. Is Mr. Brown's wife at home?

5. What is Mr. Brown's wife doing?

十、书面表达

请你根据你的实际情况, 以 "My Favorite Food" 为题, 写一篇文章, 介绍你的饮食习惯, 并判断你的饮食习惯是否健康, 以便向某类英语报纸投稿。

要求:

1. 70 词左右;
2. 可适当发挥想象。

My Favorite Food

Unit 11

How was your school trip?

单元概要

本单元话题是“School trip”，围绕话题描述过去发生的事情。重点是归纳动词过去式的变化规律，并正确使用动词的一般过去时和 how 引导的特殊疑问句描述、询问过去发生的事情或状态。通过呈现学生谈论学校组织的农场之行，介绍农场的各类活动，引导学生谈论各自的游览经历。通过呈现学校旅行日记，对比总结关于同一旅行经历的不同态度，引导学生从“去了哪里，做了什么，做得怎么样”等角度准确描述过去发生的事情，并表达个人看法。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式描述学校组织的旅行活动以及过去发生的事情。能够掌握规则动词和不规则动词过去式的变化规律，学会正确使用动词的一般过去时和 how 引导的特殊疑问句，描述做过的事情。能通过阅读本单元的两篇日记，学会用写日记的形式记录活动和心得，并理解不同人对待同一事物的不同感受；了解国内外学校组织的各种游览活动，培养探索精神和思辨意识。

A: What did Carol do?

B: She picked some strawberries/
went for a walk/milked a cow/
rode a horse/fed chickens/talked
with a farmer/took some photos.

A: Did you go to the zoo/see any
cows/visit a museum/climb a
mountain/visit a fire station/go
fishing?

B: Yes. I do./No, I don't.

Activities

School
trips

Opinions

A: How was your school trip?

B: It was great/excellent/exciting/
terrible.

A: Were the strawberries good?

B: Yes, they were./No, they weren't.

Other
expressions

in the countryside, all in all,
be interested in



文化探索

有个人要去伦敦办事，他的朋友到车站给他送行。当火车到站时，却发生了一件令人哭笑不得的事。

One evening three men got to the Dover station at about nine o'clock. One of them asked a porter(行李搬运工) what time the next train for London was. The porter answered, "You have just missed(错过) one. They go hourly. The next train is at ten." The three men decided(决定) to go off the station. So they went to a bar(酒吧). A minute or two after ten o'clock they began running into the station. The porter told them the train had just left. So they went back to the last one. "If you miss the train, you won't get to London tonight," the porter said. Twelve o'clock came, and the last train was starting out when all of the three men tried to catch the train as fast as they could. Two of them got into the carriage(车厢), but the third of them didn't run fast enough(足够). The train went out and left him behind. He laughed until tears(眼泪) came out of his eyes. Then he caught(抓住) the porter's hand and said, "Well, I myself



have to go to London, and they only come here to see me off.”

Questions:

Who went to London, the first, the second or the third man? Why did the man miss all the trains?

Section A



重点突破

1. I visited my grandparents in the countryside. 我去乡下看望了我的祖父母。

【感知】(1) —Did you go to the zoo?

—Yes, I did. /No, I didn't.

(2) —What did you do last weekend?

—I went to a farm.

(3) —Were the strawberries good?

—Yes, they were. /No, they weren't.

【思考】一般过去时表示_____某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态,也表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。一般过去时常与表示过去时间的副词或副词短语连用,如:_____昨天;_____刚才; in 2008 等。

【运用】

(1) He goes shopping with his mother every Sunday. (用 yesterday 改写句子)

He _____ with his mother yesterday.

(2) I went to the movies last night. (改为一般疑问句,并作否定回答)

_____ you _____ to the movies last night?

—No, I _____.

(3) We all _____ (have) a good time last Sunday.

2. How was your school trip? 你的学校旅行怎么样?

【感知】(1) —How was your trip last week?

—It was excellent.

(2) —How was the weather there?

—It was great.

【思考】how 引导一般过去时的特殊疑问句,意为“……怎么样”,是询问某事具体情况的常用语。

【运用】

(1) The story was very interesting. (对画线部分提问)

_____ the story?

(2) The weather was sunny that day. (对画线部分提问)

_____ the weather that day?

(3) —_____

—Great! Everyone had fun.

A. How often do you exercise?

B. How was the trip yesterday?

C. Did you ride a horse?

D. Can you do the dishes?

3. Did you learn anything? 你学到了什么吗?

【感知】(1) Did you eat anything before leaving home?

(2) I didn't believe anything she said.

(3) There isn't anything special in today's newspaper.

【思考】anything 意为“任何东西;任何事情”,常用于_____句或_____句中,类似的不定代词还有 something, everything, nothing 等。修饰不定代词时,形容词应该放在_____ (前面/后面)。

【运用】

(1) Tom! You're no longer a kid. I can cook for you but I can't do _____ for you. Go and tidy your room!

A. everything B. something

C. anything D. nothing

(2) He had a cold. He didn't want to eat _____ (something).

(3) —Did you buy _____ during your vacation?

—No, I didn't have any money.

A. something special B. special something

C. special anything D. anything special

4. But at about two o'clock, it got very cloudy and we worried it would rain. 但是两点左右,天变得很阴并且我们担心会下雨。

【感知】(1) Don't worry about the exam.

(2) Life is full of worries and problems.

(3) My sister was worried about the bad weather.

【思考】worry 可以作_____,也可以作_____,意为“担忧;担心”。作名词时,既可作可数名词又可作不可数名词。作动词时,worry 常与介词_____连用,意为“为……而担心”。



【运用】

(1) —Which would you like to read, paper books or e-books?

—My parents only allow(允许) me to read paper books. They _____ my eyes.

- A. talk about B. hear about
C. learn about D. worry about

(2) 不要担心我的英语,我正努力学呢。

Don't be _____ my English.
I'm working hard at it.



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及汉语提示填写单词

- He didn't feed the chicks but he m _____ the cows.
- I often go to visit my grandparents in the _____ /'kʌntrisaɪd/ with my parents.
- Our last trip to Mount Tai was really _____ /'eksələnt/.
- Today is Sunday and y _____ is Saturday.
- You shouldn't _____ (担心) about your mother. She is OK.

二、单项选择

- Last week Vivian _____ a dress for her mother with her first-month salary.
A. buy B. bought
C. will buy D. would buy
- Where did you go last weekend?
—I _____ to the Great Wall.
A. go B. went
C. will go D. have gone
- The girl was so _____ that she got the wonderful present from her father.
A. excited B. exciting
C. excite D. excitement
- How was your last weekend?
—_____ It rained all the weekend. I had to stay at home.
A. Terrible. B. Pretty good.
C. Not bad. D. Great.
- Mom, I'm hungry. Is there _____ to eat?
—Yes, you can have some bread on the table.
A. something B. nothing
C. anything D. everything
- Did you see the sun _____?

—Yes, I did.

- A. come in B. come to
C. come into D. come out

7. _____, the clouds _____ again!

- A. Lucky; can't come
B. Luckily; doesn't come
C. Luckily; didn't come
D. Luck; didn't come

8. —Did Cathy go surfing yesterday?

—No, she _____.

- A. wasn't B. didn't
C. weren't D. doesn't

9. Tom _____ the piano every day when he was in primary school.

- A. plays B. played
C. was playing D. has played

10. —Who watered the flowers beside the window?

—Helen _____.

- A. didn't B. do C. did D. does

三、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

- I _____ (play) basketball just now.
- They _____ (not go) to the beach last night.
- We are _____ (luck) to get together.
- The _____ (farm) worked on the farm all day.
- Carol said she saw something in the room, but I couldn't see _____ (something).

四、根据图片补全问答

1. —What did you do last weekend?



2. —_____

—My school trip was great.

3. —_____

—Yes, I did.



4. —What did you do there?



5. —_____

—They went to the farm last week.

五、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

1. 前天比尔领着我们参观了他的学校。

Bill _____ us _____ his school the day before yesterday.

2. 上周末,我和我的家人在山上玩得很开心。

I _____ so much _____ with my family in the mountains last weekend.



3. 乡下的空气很清新。

The air is so fresh _____.

4. 上周末,我在农场挤牛奶了。

I _____ a _____ on the farm last weekend.

5. 我摘了相当多的草莓。

I picked _____ of straw-berries.



能力提升

六、完形填空

Where did you go on vacation? I spent my vacation 1 my family in Beijing. We had a good time there. Our train got to Beijing at eight in the evening. We 2 in a hotel that was near Tian'anmen Square. We got up early the next morning 3 we wanted to watch the flag-raising ceremony(升旗仪式) in Tian'anmen Square. There were many people in the square 4 we got there. I was very 5 to watch the national flag go up. Then we went to 6 the Palace Museum(故宫). We spent all the 7 in it. In the afternoon, we went to the Great Wall(长城). We took a bus to go there. We were happy and 8 on the bus. When we got to the Great Wall, it was 14:00. We took many 9 there. How beautiful the Great Wall is! I love 10 very much.

1. A. of B. and C. with D. in
2. A. went B. joined C. reached D. lived
3. A. because B. so C. and D. but
4. A. when B. what C. how D. why
5. A. terrible B. exciting C. bored D. excited
6. A. draw B. look C. visit D. play
7. A. day B. week C. afternoon D. morning
8. A. busy B. relaxed C. worried D. interested
9. A. food B. photos C. books D. time
10. A. them B. him C. its D. it

七、阅读理解

Robert went to visit his friends in Paris last weekend. His friends met him at the airport on Friday afternoon and drove him to the hotel. They ate dinner at a Chinese restaurant and went to see a film after that.

Robert and his friends set out(出发) early on

Saturday morning for a farm and stayed there until Sunday morning. During their stay, they played soccer in the field and enjoyed a big meal around a campfire(篝火), singing and dancing till late into the night.

Nobody could get up early on Sunday morning. So when they got back to Paris, it was about three o'clock in the afternoon. They drove right to the airport because Robert didn't want to miss his plane back home. Robert only stayed in Paris for two nights but he had a great time with his friends.

1. Where did Robert go last weekend?
A. New York. B. London.
C. Paris. D. Beijing.
2. What did Robert and his friends do after dinner on Friday?
A. They went for a drive.
B. They played soccer.
C. They went back to the hotel.
D. They saw a film.
3. What didn't they do on the farm?
A. They didn't sing or dance.
B. They didn't play soccer.
C. They didn't ride bikes.
D. They didn't enjoy a big meal around a campfire.
4. What time did they get back to Paris?
A. About 5:00 a. m. B. About 5:00 p. m.
C. About 3:00 a. m. D. About 3:00 p. m.
5. How long did Robert stay in Paris?
A. About three days. B. About four days.
C. One day. D. Two nights.

Section B



重点突破

1. All in all, it was an *exciting* day. 总之,它是令人兴奋的一天。

【感知】(1) I was so *excited* to see the present from dad.

(2) It's *exciting* to find out the truth.

【思考】*exciting* 是形容词,意为“使人兴奋的,令人激动的”,可以作_____或_____。作表语时,主语通常是物,强调事物所拥有的特征。*excited* 是形容词,意为“兴奋的”,常作_____。



主语通常是人,强调人的情绪。类似的词语还有 interested, interesting; bored, boring; surprised, surprising.

【运用】

- (1) The girl was so _____ that she got the wonderful present from her friends.
A. excited B. exciting
C. excite D. excitement
- (2) When the boy saw the _____ games, he became very _____. (exciting/excited)
- (3) Today is an _____ (令人激动的) day.

2. Everything was about robots and I'm not interested in that. 一切都是关于机器人的,我对此不感兴趣。

【感知】(1) I am interested in the interesting book.

(2) She takes an interest in singing.

(3) His two great interests in life are music and painting.

(4) The photos he took yesterday interested me.

【思考】be _____ in sth./doing sth. 意为“对某物或做某事感兴趣”,还可以说 take an _____ in sth./doing sth.。interest 可作 _____ 词或 _____ 词。作名词时,意为“兴趣”;作动词时,意为“使某人感兴趣”。

【运用】

- (1) Many boys in my class are interested in _____ (play) soccer.
- (2) Jack 对那部电影感兴趣。
Jack _____ the movie.
- (3) The trip sounds _____. I'm _____ in it.
A. interested; interesting
B. interested; interested
C. interesting; interested
D. interesting; interesting

3. There were too many people and I couldn't really see or hear the guide. 这里有太多的人,我不能真正看见或听到导游。

【感知】(1) Our last trip was much too fun. Everyone was happy.

(2) There were too much noise and I can't hear what you said.

(3) I heard the girl singing a song when I passed by.

【思考】(1) too many 意为“太多”,后跟 _____; too much 意为“太多”,后跟 _____; much too

意为“太……”,后跟形容词或副词。

(2) hear 意为“听见,听到”,其后跟动词作宾语或补语时,动词常用 _____ 或 _____. 与 hear 相关的短语有:hear from 收到……的来信;hear of 听说、听到……的消息。

【运用】

(1) 用 too many, too much, much too 填空。

- ① There are _____ books in the bookshop.
② There is _____ water on the ground.
③ The book is _____ expensive.

(2) All of you should be quiet! I can't _____ the teacher.

A. watch B. see C. hear D. listen

(3) I heard a person _____ (play) the piano this morning.

4. I learned a lot about robots. 我学到了很多关于机器人的知识。

【感知】(1) I learn English for many years.

(2) He is better at math and I want to learn from him.

(3) I will learn to speak French when I arrived in Paris.

【思考】learn 意为“学习”,“学习做某事”用 learn _____ sth.; “向谁学习”用 learn _____ sb.; “学习哪方面的知识”用 learn _____ sth.。

【运用】

- (1) Tina learned a lot _____ (about/from) farming last year.
(2) It's useful to learn _____ (speak) a second language.
(3) Everyone should learn _____ (about/from) Lei Feng and help others.

**基础强化**

一、根据首字母、音标及汉语提示填写单词

1. I can't _____ (听见) you clearly. Can you please say it again?
2. —Why didn't you buy that car?
—Because it was too _____ /ɪk'spensɪv/.
3. The shorts on sale are very c _____. Let's go and have a look.
4. My daughter is _____ /'ɪntrəstɪd/ in dancing.
5. L _____, the weather is fine today and we can go camping.



二、单项选择

- It's not easy for us _____ to our parents when we have problems.
A. to talk B. talking
C. talk D. to talking
- Lin Wei went to the countryside and had _____ fun there.
A. so many B. so much
C. so that D. so few
- I don't like the gift _____.
A. in all B. for all C. at all D. after all
- All of the clothes are very _____, and I don't have enough money to buy.
A. expensive B. cheap
C. nice D. fashion
- Where did you go on weekends?
—I _____ the fire station.
A. visit B. visited
C. visits D. am visiting
- Tina learned _____ about farming last year.
A. a lot of B. lot of
C. a lots of D. a lot
- _____ you on your vacation yesterday?
—No, I _____.
A. Was; wasn't B. Was; weren't
C. Were; wasn't D. Were; weren't
- Where _____ he go on vacation?
—He went to the mountains.
A. is B. does C. has D. did
- The boy was interested _____ science.
A. in B. on C. at D. for
- Did you find _____ fun in the book?
—Yes. It talks about how to be a good kid.
A. nothing B. something
C. anything D. everything

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

- 总的说来, 这是令人兴奋的一天。
_____, it was an exciting day.
- 在公园我们拍了很多照片。
In the park, we _____ lots of _____.
- 然后导游教了我们如何制作机器人模型。
Then the guide _____ us _____ a model robot.
- 卡罗尔学到了很多关于农业的知识。
Carol _____ a lot _____ farming.

- 幸运的是, 天没有下雨, 太阳又出来了。

_____, it didn't rain, and the sun _____ again.

四、选择合适的单词并用其适当形式填空

go, milk, draw, visit, interest, have, play, kind, study, live

My family were very busy last weekend. My parents 1 shopping in the morning. My brother 2 tennis with his friends. My sister Tina stayed at home and 3 pictures. I 4 for the science test. In the afternoon, we 5 our grandparents. They 6 in the countryside. We got there by bus. We were so happy to see them. They 7 a big farm. There are different 8 of animals on the farm. My brother 9 a cow and my sister fed the dog with me. My mother took some great photos for us. We had a good time. It was a really 10 day.

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

五、连词成句

- she, stayed, and, cleaned, at home, the house, yesterday (.)
- did, take, you, in the zoo, any photos (?)
- Paul, Sunday afternoon, rode a horse, on (.)



能力提升

六、完形填空

We went to a countryside primary school as volunteers (志愿者) last Saturday. That was a 1 day for the children there. They 2 all very happy when we got there. It was March, but it was still cold in the countryside. The children didn't wear 3 clothes or shoes.

In the afternoon, we took many 4 for them, and they looked very 5. For children in big cities, 6 are very common (普通的), 7 in the countryside, the children 8 know what a camera is. They stood 9 us and looked at their



pictures in 10. They all 11 to know something about camera in the future.

Children in big cities often complain (抱怨) 12 parents don't cook delicious meals. Do they 13 the food is like a big meal for the children in the countryside? I 14 more and more people can help these 15. I will never forget that day.

1. A. bad B. true C. special D. lucky
2. A. are B. were C. was D. will be
3. A. warm B. hot C. large D. small
4. A. photos B. maps
 C. cartoons D. newspapers
5. A. afraid B. scared C. sad D. excited
6. A. cameras B. books C. desks D. bags
7. A. but B. and C. so D. or
8. A. won't B. doesn't C. don't D. didn't
9. A. around B. from C. across D. about
10. A. rule B. surprise C. way D. team
11. A. followed B. enjoyed
 C. kept D. wanted
12. A. their B. his C. her D. our
13. A. make B. eat C. know D. copy
14. A. hope B. ask C. move D. take
15. A. friends B. teachers
 C. parents D. children

七、阅读理解

I had a summer camp with my classmates last year. Early in the morning, we gathered (集合) at the bus station. After saying goodbye to our parents, we got on the buses. It took us more than two hours to arrive at the campground. We got off the buses cheerfully (欢乐地). Laughing and shouting, we jumped and ran all over the place. It was the first time for us to be away from our parents. Some of us started to feel homesick (想家的).

However, when the night party and dances began, the homesickness was gone. The next day, everybody rushed to the boating class, hoping to be at the head of the others. At first, my friends and I worked hard, but the boat wouldn't listen to us and kept going round and round. Then the teacher taught us how to work together. After many tries, we did much better. Swimming class was my favorite. It was about the hottest time of a day and the best time to stay in the cool water. The swimming teacher was a funny man, and during the class he often made us laugh happily. During the week I learned a lot of new things and made many new friends. I also learned how to take care of myself.

1. They got to the campground _____.
 A. on foot B. by bike
 C. by bus D. by plane
2. Why was swimming class the writer's favorite?
 A. It was good to stay in the cool water when the weather was hot.
 B. The writer felt quite relaxed during the class.
 C. The swimming teacher was interesting.
 D. All the above.
3. Which statement is NOT true?
 A. The children were happy to be away from Dad and Mom.
 B. Their homesickness lasted for long.
 C. It was teamwork to boat.
 D. They camped for a week.
4. Which is the best title for the passage?
 A. I Learnt a Lot
 B. Boating and Swimming
 C. On the Campground
 D. My Summer Camp

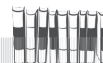
单元评估

一、听力测试

(一) 请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题, 从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中, 选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. Where did Scott go last Wednesday?
 A. Japan. B. The United Kingdom.
 C. America.

2. When did Jenny go to the countryside?
 A. This morning.
 B. Yesterday afternoon.
 C. Yesterday morning.
3. Who did Frank go to the farm with?
 A. His grandfather.
 B. His father.



C. His mother.

4. What did John do yesterday morning?

- A. He grew strawberries.
B. He picked vegetables.
C. He picked strawberries.

5. How was the weather yesterday?



(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

6. Did Betty go on the school trip?

- A. Yes, she did. B. No, she didn't.
C. I don't know.

7. Who did Betty go to a movie with?

- A. Her father. B. Her mother.
C. Her sister.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. Where did Nick go on the school trip?

- A. He went to the zoo.
B. He went to the farm.
C. He went to the museum.

9. How did Nick go to the school trip?

- A. By bike. B. By bus. C. By subway.

10. Why didn't Nick take many photos?

- A. Because it was boring.
B. Because he didn't like taking photos.
C. Because there were too many people there.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

When	Where	Weather	Activity
Monday	White Beach	11. _____ and hot	swam in the water
Tuesday	two 12. _____	rainy	a lot of 13. _____ things
Wednesday and Thursday	city	cloudy	14. _____ in the city
Friday	mountains	15. _____	climb mountains

二、单项选择

1. —How was your school trip?

—Great. We _____ a picnic by the lake.

- A. have B. had
C. are having D. will have

2. We are all interested _____ having a math class.

- A. in B. on C. at D. of

3. —What's wrong, Alan?

—It's too _____. I can't hear anything.

- A. dirty B. dark C. noisy D. quiet

4. —Why are you driving so _____, Tony?

—Sorry, I'll be late.

- A. easily B. fast
C. slowly D. friendly

5. The rain stopped and the sun _____.

- A. come out B. come in
C. came out D. came in

6. —I'm afraid we get lost.

—Don't _____. I take a map with me.

- A. forget B. think C. study D. worry

7. —Were you at home _____?

—No, I wasn't.

- A. now B. yesterday
C. next Monday D. every day

8. —Is there everything in the tent?

—Sorry, I can't see _____ in it.

- A. everything B. anything
C. something D. nothing

9. I lost my ticket. But _____, the guide gave me another one.

- A. early B. still
C. luckily D. quickly

10. Linda is _____ girl. All of us like her in our class.

- A. a quite beautiful B. quite beautiful a
C. quite beautiful D. beautiful quite a

三、完形填空

Kim went to a beautiful beach on Monday with his friends. It was sunny and hot. So they had great fun 1 in the water. In the afternoon, they went shopping. But the shops were crowded (拥挤), they didn't really 2 it.

The next day, it was rainy, so they went to 3 museum. It was boring. Kim found a small boy crying in the corner. The boy was 4. He



helped the boy find his father. Kim was very
 5. But he had no 6 for a taxi. So he had
 to walk back to the hotel. That made 7 very tired.
 8 Wednesday, the weather was very cool.
 So they 9 tennis. They played all the morn-
 ing. It was 10 fun.

1. A. skating B. shopping
 C. sitting D. playing
2. A. get B. enjoy C. worry D. meet
3. A. a B. an C. the D. /
4. A. quiet B. scary C. lost D. sorry
5. A. strict B. special C. lucky D. happy
6. A. ticket B. money C. gift D. stamp
7. A. he B. him C. his D. them
8. A. In B. At C. On D. Of
9. A. played B. bought
 C. talked D. watched
10. A. never B. really C. also D. a little

四、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话

A: Hi, Vera. How was your school trip?

B: It was great.

A: Where did you go?

B: 1

A: Really? Wow! What did you do there?

B: Well, we went to a lot of museums.

A: Oh, how were they?

B: They were really interesting. 2

A: Did you go shopping?

B: Yeah, I did.

A: 3

B: Oh, they were very expensive.

A: And how were the people? 4

B: Yeah, the people were very friendly. My par-
 ents have some Japanese friends, and we had
 dinner at their house.

A: 5

B: It was delicious. I love Japanese food!

- A. Did you meet any Japanese people?
 B. How were the stores?
 C. I went to Tokyo with my family.
 D. How was the food?
 E. But they were very crowded.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

My grandfather never watched TV. He thought that people spent too much time watching it. Some of his friends often talked about sports shows, the movies and plays. My grandfather said to himself, "They never read any books or go out in the evening." So he didn't buy a TV.

Two years ago my grandfather was 60 years old. He stopped working in the hospital. My father bought him a TV. He began to watch all the news. He knows much more about the world now. And he reads more books, too.

Now, my grandfather will get very angry(生气) if you trouble(打扰) him when he is watching TV. I can't know that my grandfather can change his idea when he is 60.

1. My grandfather didn't watch TV because _____.

- A. he had no time to watch it
- B. he couldn't buy the TV set
- C. he thought watching TV is bad for people's eyes
- D. he thought it took people much time to watch TV

2. My grandfather _____ when he worked in the hospital.

- A. went to mountains
- B. played sports
- C. read books
- D. watched TV

3. My grandfather didn't work in the hospital _____.

- A. after he was sixty years old
- B. before my father bought him a TV
- C. when my father asked him not to work
- D. after he liked watching the news

4. My grandfather is _____ now.

- A. 58 B. 60
 C. 62 D. 61

5. Which of the following is TRUE?

- A. The writer knows why his grandfather changed his idea.
- B. My grandfather enjoys watching TV every day now.
- C. My grandfather bought a TV at the age of 60.
- D. The writer as well as his grandfather likes watching TV.

六、根据音标及句意填写单词

- 1. Emily is a /'lʌvli/ girl. Everyone likes her very much.
- 2. My mother waters the /'flaʊəz/ in the morning.
- 3. Is there a history /mju:'ziəm/ near here.
- 4. /'evrɪθɪŋ/ is ready. Let's begin our meeting.
- 5. Don't /'wʌri/ about your lessons. I can help you.

七、按要求补全句子或问答

- 1. I can't see (something) new in today's newspaper.
- 2. Last week, we (feed) some cows in the countryside.
- 3. We are all (interest) in art class.
- 4. —What did you do yesterday?
—
- 5. —
—Yes, I did.



八、选择适当的句子补全短文,有两项多余

My name is Sam. Yesterday I got up at about 8:00 in the morning. I took a shower first. 1 Then I heard there was a strange noise. I thought it came from behind the cooker(炉具). I took away the cooker, but I couldn't see anything. 2 He said it could be a gas leak(煤气泄漏). I was scared. I ran out of my house to call the police. But then I remembered that there was no gas in my house. So I walked back.

Before I opened the door, I remembered one thing my mom told me; a llama(美洲驼) ran out from the zoo last Wednesday. I put my key in the door, turned it and opened the door slowly. 3 I walked into the kitchen. I found the noise was from a big box next to the cooker. 4 I saw a

llama in the box ! It was snoring(打鼾)! I called the zoo. The workers in the zoo came soon. 5 They gave me £50 to thank me for helping them find the cute animal.

- A. I heard the noise again!
- B. It was a lot of fun.
- C. Then I went into the kitchen to cook breakfast.
- D. I opened the box slowly.
- E. Luckily, there was nothing in the box.
- F. I called my friend Mike for help.
- G. They were happy to see the llama again.

- 1. 2. 3.
- 4. 5.

九、书面表达

五月三号(星期天)你参加了你们班组织的郊游活动,那天天气晴朗,你们玩得非常开心。请根据表格提示,写一篇约 70 词的日记,以便发表在某英语报上。

活动时间	星期天
出发时间	8:00
返回时间	4:30
集合地点	学校大门口
活动地点	千佛山,济南博物馆
活动内容	爬山,野餐,参观博物馆
交通方式	公共汽车

Unit 12

What did you do last weekend?

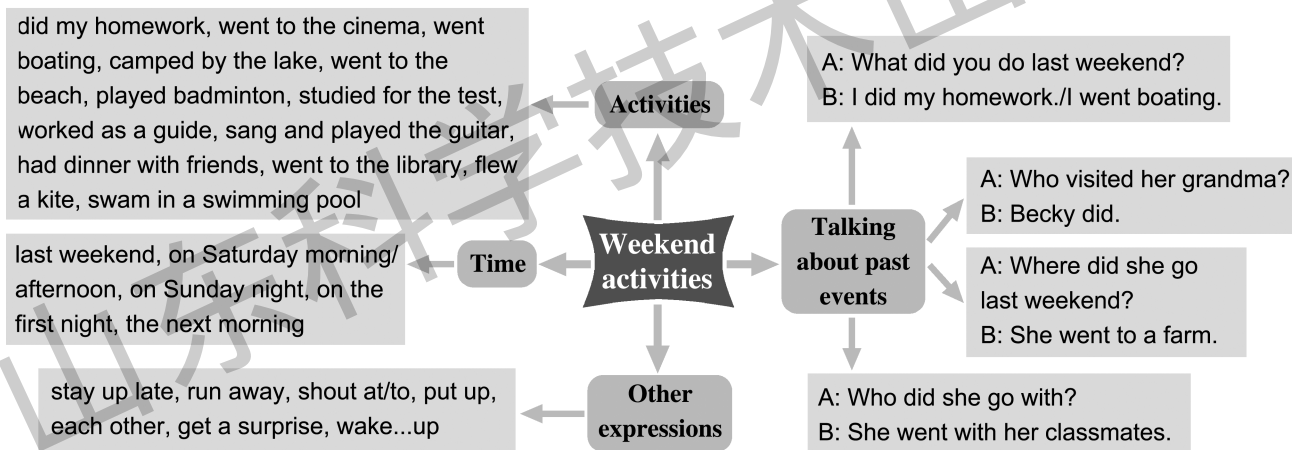
单元概要

本单元话题是“Weekend activities”，围绕话题谈论过去发生的事情。重点是运用一般过去时谈论刚刚过去的一些常见的周末活动。通过呈现日常周末活动，使用动词的过去式和特殊疑问句，具体谈论“周末过得怎么样，做了什么，去了哪里，和谁一起去的”等活动细节。通过呈现“难忘的周末”语篇，有效介绍过去发生的事情，并培养介绍经历和讲故事的能力。



学习目标

通过学习本单元内容，能运用以下单词、短语和句式描述过去发生的事情。学会正确运用动词过去式和 what, where, who, how 引导的一般过去时的特殊疑问句，描述周末活动或讲述亲身经历，并表达自己的观点。能够从过去的经历中总结经验教训，更好地规划周末活动安排。了解国外学生的周末生活，并初步了解印度的文化；通过丰富多彩的周末活动，培养生活情趣。



文化探索

七、八月份，暑期到来，正是游玩的好时候。在美国，不同家庭有着各自的度假方式。

Most American families like to have a vacation in summer. Summer is a good season(季节) for vacation. It is often hot in July and August.

Children do not go to school in those two months. Some people like to stay at home, read books, or watch TV. Many families take their lunch to eat at a place with many trees or a nice lake.

Some people have enough(足够的) time and money to travel to other countries like France, Japan and Australia. They usually fly to these countries. Many families travel(旅行) by car or train to see interesting places in their own countries. Their favorite cities are New York, Chicago, Miami, San Francisco and Los Angeles.

Not everyone likes to go to busy cities. Some families travel to mountains or beautiful valleys(山谷).
Questions:

Where and how do some American families like to have a vacation in summer? What about you? Please share your favorite summer vacation with us.



Section A



重点突破

1. What did you do last weekend? 上周末你做了什么?

【感知】(1) —What did you do last weekend?

—I did my homework.

(2) —Who visited her grandma?

—Becky did.

(3) —Where did she go last weekend?

—She went to a farm.

(4) —Who did she go with?

—She went with her classmates.

【思考】what, who, where 引导一般过去时的_____句。当句中有助动词 did 时,谓语动词用_____。

【运用】

(1) I played soccer games on my computer last weekend. (对画线部分提问)

_____ you _____ on your computer last weekend?

(2) The students went to the beach last weekend. (对画线部分提问)

_____ the students _____ last weekend?

(3) Miss Smith taught us math last year. (就画线部分提问)

_____ you math last year?

2. How interesting! 真有趣呀!

【感知】(1) What an interesting book it is!

(2) What exciting news!

(3) How funny the time is!

【思考】感叹句的结构: how + _____/ _____ (+ 主语 + 谓语); what + a/an + _____ + 单数可数名词 (+ 主语 + 谓语), what + 形容词 + _____/ _____ (+ 主语 + 谓语)。

【运用】

(1) —Our classmates are going to a library after the exams.

—_____ exciting idea!

- A. What B. What an
C. How an D. How

(2) —_____ fast China is developing!

—Yes, we are so lucky to live in such a great country.

- A. What B. What a
C. How D. How a

(3) _____ interesting job he has!

- A. What an B. How
C. How a D. What

3. I worked as a guide at the Natural History Museum. 我在自然历史博物馆做导游工作。

【感知】(1) He works for a company.

(2) She is working on her new book.

(3) The problem is difficult but I can work it out.

(4) As a teacher, Mr. Wang is good with us.

【思考】(1) 有关 work 的常见短语有: work _____ 意为“作为……工作,从事……工作”; work _____ 意为“为……工作”; work _____ 意为“从事,忙于”; work sth. _____ 意为“算出,解决”。

(2) as 作介词时,意为“作为”;作连词时,意为“当……时候”,相当于_____;还可意为“因为,由于”,相当于_____;还可意为“按照……方式”,如:as he told me.

【运用】

用 as, for, on 或 out 填空。

(1) You are going to work _____ the painting for a long time.

(2) The problem is too hard for me to work _____.

(3) He is a doctor, so he works _____ a hospital.

(4) She is going to leave her job and go to China to work _____ a language teacher.

4. I stay up late to watch the soccer game. 我熬夜很晚看足球赛。

【感知】(1) It's raining heavily and I have to stay at home.

(2) The weather will stay fine for days.

【思考】stay 意为“停留”,后常接介词构成短语,表示停留的地点,如:stay _____ 待在家里;可以作系动词,意为“保持”,后常接_____ 作表语。

【运用】

(1) Don't _____ too late, or you will feel tired next day.

- A. wake up B. get up
C. stay up D. show up



- (2) We have to do sports to stay _____ (health).



基础强化

一、根据音标、汉语提示及句意填写单词

- I can speak another _____ /'læŋɡwɪdʒ/.
- The school is very far _____ (远离) from here and you'd better take a bus.
- I am really afraid of _____ (老鼠) because I think they are scary.
- It's good for our health to play _____ /'bædmɪntən/.
- My grandparents live in the country. They like enjoying the _____ (自然的) beauty.

二、单项选择

- _____ good news! The football match(足球比赛) will be held in South Africa.
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
- Did you have a good weekend?
—Yes, it was good. But I was kind of _____.
A. interested B. happy
C. tired D. excited
- I _____ until 12 o'clock last night for the math test.
A. woke up B. stayed up
C. grew up D. got up
- Many _____ come to _____ the Great Wall every year.
A. visitors; visits B. visits; visit
C. visitors; visit D. visits; visits
- _____ a Chinese, I'm very interested in Chinese paintings.
A. As B. For C. With D. Of
- _____ did you go _____?
—I went there with my family.
A. Where; to B. Who; with
C. When; there D. What; to
- I saw a cat _____ with a ball in the living room.
A. to play B. played C. plays D. playing
- _____ do you usually do at weekends, Susan?
—I usually help my parents do some housework.
A. What B. How C. Where D. When
- The thief(小偷) _____ when he saw the policeman.

- A. took a walk B. ran away
C. shouted at D. came out

10. Frank _____ the piano at home three hours ago.
A. is playing B. played
C. plays D. to play

三、用括号内单词的适当形式填空

- I saw David _____ (play) table tennis on the playground.
- It's important _____ (learn) all your subjects well.
- I think _____ (nature) things are better than man-made(人造的) things.
- Who showed the _____ (visit) around our school?
- Students went _____ (camp) in a small village.

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词

- 但我现在有点累,我熬夜看足球赛了。
But I'm _____ tired now. I _____ late to watch the soccer game.
- 你不应该冲着你的孩子吼叫。
You should not _____ your child.
- 猫很快跑开了。
The cat _____ quickly.
- 那就是为什么学一门第二语言是很重要的。
That's why it's important to learn a _____.

五、从方框中选择合适的句子补全对话

- A: Hey, Karen. 1
B: On Saturday morning I went to the beach.
A: 2
B: Great! I went with Nancy. 3
A: I know. What did you do on Saturday night?
B: I went to the movies with Mark. 4
A: Me? On Saturday I stayed at home and cleaned my room. On Sunday morning I went to the library.
B: 5
A: Yes, it was.

- A. Sounds like a good, quiet weekend.
B. How was the beach?
C. What did you do last weekend?
D. And it was really fun.
E. What about your weekend, Mary?

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____



能力提升

六、完形填空

I had a very busy weekend. 1 Saturday morning, I played computer games. Then I 2 a letter to my friend. After lunch, I went to the movies 3 my friends. Three hours later 4 went shopping together(一起). On Sunday morning, Sam and I went to the beach. We flew kites and we had fun. At seven o'clock, I came back home. 5 I didn't have dinner 6 home. Later on, I went to a birthday 7 for Emma. I gave a lovely gift 8 Emma. She liked it very much. We had a great time at the party. When I came home, I was a little 9. And I still 10 my homework. My parents were unhappy for that.

1. A. In B. On
C. At D. Of
2. A. sends B. writes
C. read D. wrote
3. A. and B. or
C. with D. but
4. A. we B. you
C. I D. they
5. A. And B. Of
C. But D. As
6. A. in B. of
C. and D. at
7. A. party B. cake
C. library D. park
8. A. to B. in
C. for D. at
9. A. relaxing B. tired
C. exciting D. interesting
10. A. didn't do B. doesn't do
C. do D. did

七、阅读理解

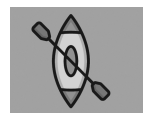
Last week Johnny had a very busy weekend. On Saturday morning, he cleaned his room. That made his mother very happy. In the afternoon, he did his math homework. It was not difficult, so it only took him one hour to finish the homework. And in the evening, he went to visit his aunt with his parents. They had a big dinner there. The next morning, he went swimming after getting up. Usually he goes swimming twice a week. He loves

it very much. After lunch he went to school playground and played football. That exercise makes him in good health. On Sunday evening, he watched TV for an hour at home and then put the books in his schoolbag for the next day.

1. What about Johnny's math homework?
A. It was easy. B. It was difficult.
C. It was too much. D. It was important.
2. Where was Johnny on Saturday evening?
A. At home.
B. In his school.
C. On the playground.
D. At his aunt's house.
3. What did Johnny do after lunch on Sunday?
A. He played basketball.
B. He played football.
C. He went swimming.
D. He had a rest.
4. How long did Johnny watch TV on Sunday evening?
A. Half an hour. B. One hour.
C. Two hours. D. Three hours.

八、根据图片或提示补全问答

1. —
—Yes, my weekend was fun.
2. —
—It was really cold yesterday.
3. —
—Yes. He played it with my classmates.
4. — (last Sunday)
—Mary did.
5. — (school trip)
—Last April.



Section B



重点突破

1. There we **put up** our tents and made a fire to keep us warm and cook food on. 在那里我们搭起帐篷,生火取暖做饭。

【感知】(1) If you know the answer, please **put up your hand**.

(2) We'd better eat more vegetables to **keep**



healthy.

(3) The leader *kept the workers working* for days.

【思考】(1) put up 意为“搭起,举起,张贴”。与 put 相关的短语还有: put _____ 穿上; put _____ 推迟。

(2) keep 当“保存”讲时,是及物动词; keep 当“遵守”讲时,是及物动词,相当于 follow,如: _____ 遵守规则; keep 当“保持”讲时,可作及物动词或不及物动词,后接 _____ 作表语。

【运用】

(1) Tom, _____ the rules in your school.

A. break B. follow C. keep D. make

(2) *Taijiquan* is my favorite and I often play it to keep _____. (healthy/health)

(3) Would you please _____ the picture on the wall(墙)?

A. pick up B. look up
C. get up D. put up

2. But I was so tired that I went to sleep early. 但是我太累了,所以我很早就睡了。

【感知】(1) The boy is so young *that* he can't dress himself.

(2) The boy is *too* young *to* dress himself.

(3) The boy is *not* old *enough* *to* dress himself.

【思考】so... that... 意为“如此……以至于……”。常用结构为“so... that + _____”。同义的结构还有:“too... to + _____”,意为“太……而不能……”;“not... enough to + _____”,意为“不够……去……”。

【运用】

(1) Prince George is _____ lovely that many people like him very much.

A. very B. such C. as D. so

(2) He is not careful enough _____ (work) the difficult problem out.

(3) The river is too wide(宽的) _____ (cross).

3. That next morning, my sister and I got a terrible surprise. 第二天早上,我和妹妹和我受到了极大(可怕)的震惊。

【感知】(1) Today is Father's Day. I'm thinking about how I can give my father a *surprise*.

(2) I am *surprised* that the girl could take care of herself when she was only five years old.

(3) It's *surprising* that David's little daughter can speak English so well.

【思考】surprise 作名词时,意为“惊喜;惊讶”;作动词,意为“使……惊奇;使……惊讶”。 _____

意为“感到惊讶的”,常作表语; _____ 意为“令人惊喜惊讶的”,作定语或表语。

【运用】

(1) The gift is a _____ to me. I'm so happy.

A. surprise B. fear C. danger D. fun

(2) Linda felt very _____ when she saw a snake.

A. surprised B. shy
C. tired D. excited

(3) What _____ news it is! Nobody believes it.

A. a surprising B. surprising
C. a surprised D. surprised

4. When we looked out of our tent, we saw a big snake sleeping near the fire. 当我们望向帐篷外时,我们发现有条大蛇睡在篝火边。

【感知】(1) My dad told me later that snakes don't have ears but can *feel* things *moving*.

(2) You can see many aunts *dancing* together on the square.

(3) Can you hear someone *singing* in the classroom?

【思考】see, hear, feel 等表示 _____ 的动词后可接 _____,表示“看见/听到/觉得某人或某物在做(某事)”。

【运用】

(1) I can hear the children _____ (sing) in the classroom.

(2) I looked out of the window and saw some boys _____ (play) soccer on the playground.

(3) I am afraid because I can feel something _____ (cross) my face.



基础强化

一、根据首字母、音标及汉语提示完成单词

1. My friend had a _____ /sə(r)'praɪz/ party for me on my birthday.

2. I was _____ /skeəd/ to see a big snake out of our tent.

3. The mother w _____ up her son with a popular song yesterday morning.

4. The two men got into the _____ (森林) and heard a boy shout “help”.

5. He saw a big tiger _____ (移动) in the cage.

二、单项选择

1. My friend works _____ a shopping guide in



the supermarket near my school.

A. for B. as C. in D. to

2. —Did you go shopping yesterday?

—

A. Yes, I do. B. Yes, I did.
C. Yes, I am. D. No, I couldn't.

3. What do your parents usually do _____ Saturday mornings?

A. in B. on C. at D. about

4. My sister is _____ quiet. She doesn't talk much.

A. kind of B. kinds of
C. a kind of D. all kinds of

5. —What _____ you _____ last weekend?

—I played soccer with my friends.

A. did; do B. did; did
C. do; did D. do; do

6. —*Harry Potter* is _____ interesting _____ I want to read it again.

—I agree with you.

A. so; that B. too; to
C. such; that D. as; as

7. There was a snake in front of him. He was so _____ that he couldn't move.

A. scary B. scared C. scaring D. scare

8. We _____ our tents and made a fire.

A. put up B. put on
C. put down D. put away

9. We went to Jenny's room and _____.

A. woke up her B. woke her up
C. wake up her D. wake her up

10. Is there _____ in today's newspaper?

A. something important
B. anything important
C. important something
D. important anything

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. A family of mice _____ (be) in the kitchen on Sunday morning.
2. Were you _____ (scare) when the snake was moving?
3. Helen got lost in the forest. Her father got a terrible _____. We were all _____ at the _____ news. (surprise)
4. They _____ (put) up a small house on the farm last week.
5. Can you feel anything _____ (move) in the bag?

四、连词成句

1. lesson, was, for, this, a, me, very useful (.)

2. so, very tired, went, early, I, was, to, I, sleep (.)

3. the English test, Tom, last night, studied, for (.)

4. English homework, I, ago, my, finished, an hour (.)

5. table tennis, I, Linda, on, the playground, playing, saw (.)

五、根据汉语意思完成英语句子, 每空一词

1. 当我见到他的时候, 我吃了一惊。

When I saw him, I _____ a _____.

2. 在那里我们搭起帐篷, 生火取暖并做饭。

There we _____ our tents and made a fire to keep us warm and cook food on.

3. 他吵醒了蛇, 它爬到湖附近的森林里了。

He _____ the snake _____ and it moved into the forest near the lake.

4. 当我们向帐篷外面看时, 我们看见一条大蛇正在火附近睡觉。

When we _____ of our tent, we saw a big snake sleeping near the fire.

六、看图写话

下图是 Jack 上周末的活动。假如你是 Jack, 请你用 7~8 句英语描述一下自己周末做了什么, 以便在明天的英语课上与同学们交流。



周六上午



周六下午



周六晚上



周日上午



周日下午



周日晚上



能力提升

七、完形填空

I'll never forget that morning. It was cold and 1 outside. And it was also my first day in my new school. Along the road to it, I walked 2. I didn't want to get there early because I 3 about lots of things in the new school. That made me 4.

It was early and there weren't many people on the road. In front of me, a girl was 5 a bike in the snow. Suddenly, she fell down (跌倒). She wanted to 6 but she couldn't. I went over and helped her. She said, "Thank you." And then she rode away. I was still sad, 7 what she said made me feel warm.

Some minutes later, I got to school. 8 Ms. Hunt's help, I found my new classroom. Then, Ms. Hunt introduced (介绍) me to my 9. After that she asked me to sit down next to a girl. I felt so 10 that I didn't look at her. Soon the first class, English, 11. Their books were different from those in my old school. I didn't know 12 I could do. Suddenly, a(n) 13 book appeared (出现) in front of me. "Hi, my name's Carol," the girl next to me said. "Let's read together." I felt the love and friendship from her. That made 14 happy. But when I looked up, I got a big 15. She was the girl I helped this morning.

From then on, Carol and I were good friends.

1. A. rainy B. sunny
C. snowy D. dry
2. A. slowly B. quickly
C. quietly D. differently
3. A. liked B. missed
C. talked D. worried
4. A. lazy B. happy
C. excited D. sad
5. A. buying B. riding
C. taking D. drawing
6. A. come true B. come on
C. get up D. stay up
7. A. or B. because
C. and D. but
8. A. For B. With
C. At D. To
9. A. parents B. students

C. classmates D. children

10. A. shy B. hot
C. interested D. started
11. A. finished B. started
C. worked D. ordered
12. A. when B. where
C. what D. why
13. A. English B. Chinese
C. math D. history
14. A. her B. me
C. him D. it
15. A. answer B. plan
C. surprise D. idea

八、阅读理解

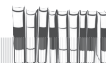
One day John took two of his friends into the mountains. They put up their tents and then rode off to the forest to watch how the trees were growing.

By afternoon when they were about ten kilometers from their camp, it started to snow. A moment later, more and more snow fell. Soon they could hardly (几乎不) see the road. John knew there were two roads. One road went to the camp, and the other went to John's house but all was white now. Everything was the same. How could he take his friends back to the camp?

John had an idea. The horses! Let the horses take them back! But what would happen if the horses took them to the wrong way? That would be a long trip in such cold weather!

It was getting late. They rode on and on. At last the horses stopped. Where were they? None of them could tell. John looked around. What was that under the trees? It was one of their tents!

1. John and his two friends went to the forest to _____.
A. put up their tents B. enjoy snow
C. watch the trees
2. They could not find their way back because _____.
A. there was not any road at all in the forest
B. they couldn't decide (决定) which of the two roads went to their tents
C. everything was covered (覆盖) by snow
3. They wanted the horses to take them _____.
A. to John's house B. to the camp
C. to the forest
4. The horses stopped because _____.
A. they saw John's house
B. they were tired after a long trip
C. they got back to the camp

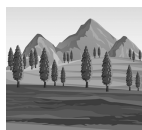


单元评估

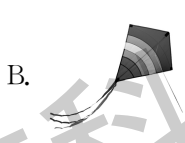
一、听力测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

- Where was Tina last night?
A. At home. B. At a cinema.
C. At her friend's home.
- When did Jim go to the zoo?
A. Last Sunday. B. Last Monday.
C. Last Saturday.
- How was Peter's weekend?
A. Terrible. B. Not bad.
C. Very good.
- What are they talking about?



- What did the girl do last Sunday?



(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

- Who played tennis with Mike this morning?
A. Carol. B. Sally. C. David.
- What do they want to do?
A. To go swimming.
B. To play tennis.
C. To go to the zoo.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

- Where did Kate go yesterday?
A. She went camping.
B. She climbed mountains.
C. She visited grandparents
- What was the weather like yesterday?
A. Cloudy. B. Windy. C. Sunny.
- What did they do in the afternoon?
A. They put up a tent.

B. They climbed the mountains.

C. They went fishing.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Where	We went to the 11. _____.
When	We went there 12. _____.
How	We went there on 13. _____.
Weather	It was 14. _____.
Who	Many people were there. Most of them were 15. _____.

二、单项选择

- _____ did you do on vacation?
—I went to the summer camp.
A. What B. Where C. How D. When
- Don't _____ late. It's bad for your health.
A. cut up B. put up C. stay up D. go up
- Yesterday I saw two little dogs _____ at the gate of the park.
—Really! It was interesting.
A. play B. plays C. to play D. playing
- Why did the girl _____ so loudly, Tony?
—Because she saw a big snake in front of her.
A. shout B. move C. show D. tell
- Do you often play _____ badminton with your friends on weekends?
A. a B. an C. the D. /
- The boy is sleeping. Remember to _____ at seven o'clock.
—OK.
A. wake her up B. wake him up
C. wake me up D. wake them up
- Who cleaned the classroom?
—Lisa and Mary _____.
A. do B. does C. did D. doing
- Did you watch the soccer game on TV?
—Yes. _____ great it was!
A. How B. What C. How a D. What a
- _____ is difficult for them to finish the work in two days.
A. This B. That C. He D. It



10. The little boy looked at his mother _____ surprise.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

三、完形填空

Last week grandpa called me. He asked me to spend my vacation with him. He lives in a mountain village. It's small but it's very 1 there in summer. I was very happy and thanked him. I said, "I'm going to visit you when our 2 vacation begins."

It was July 5th last Tuesday. Parents took me to the supermarket and we bought some delicious food. The next morning dad took me to the 3 station. It was the 4 time for me to have a trip by myself. The train left at six thirty. I looked out of the windows in the train. I found the scenes(景色) were beautiful. I wasn't 5 at all.

At four in the afternoon my train arrived 6 a station. I saw my grandpa 7 outside. I got off the train and ran to him. He was happy when he saw me. I looked at him 8 and down. He was old 9 strong.

His village is about three kilometers from the station. We walked there. The mountains are high and green. I 10 I could have a good time there.

1. A. cool B. cold
C. hot D. rainy
2. A. spring B. summer
C. autumn D. winter
3. A. bus B. subway
C. train D. taxi
4. A. one B. first
C. two D. second
5. A. happy B. excited
C. surprised D. tired
6. A. in B. on
C. at D. for
7. A. standing B. sitting
C. shouting D. playing
8. A. in B. out
C. up D. into
9. A. or B. but
C. and D. because
10. A. learned B. felt
C. thought D. remembered

四、从方框中选择适当的句子补全对话,有两项多余

A: Hi, Nick. 1

B: Yes, sure.

A: 2

B: I visited my cousin and played tennis with him.

Well, how was your weekend, Jane?

A: It was great. 3 In the supermarket I met Mr. Smith.

B: Mr. Smith? 4

A: He's a good English teacher from the USA.

B: 5

A: Yes, of course. Look! The photo is over there.

- A. What did you do?
B. What about you?
C. Did you take a photo of him?
D. Who is Mr. Smith?
E. How was the weather?
F. Did you have a good weekend?
G. I saw a movie and then went shopping.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

五、阅读理解

John is traveling by train. He is very hungry. The train stops at a small station. He wants to buy one cake to eat very much, but it is raining hard. He wants someone to help him. A little boy is coming over to him. John asks the boy to buy cakes for him. He gives the little boy one dollar and says, "Go and buy two cakes with the money. One cake is for me, the other is for you. Can you help me?"

The little boy is very happy and runs over to buy cakes in the rain. A few minutes later the little boy comes back and says to John, "I'm sorry. I'm eating the last cake. It's delicious. Thank you very much. Here is your fifty cents."

1. John is traveling _____.

- A. by plane B. by train
C. by bus D. on foot

2. John wants to eat _____.

- A. one cake B. two cakes
C. two more cakes D. three cakes

3. _____ helps John to buy cakes.

- A. A little boy B. A little girl
C. A man D. A woman



4. The little boy can't buy two cakes because _____.
 A. there is only one cake left
 B. he doesn't like to buy two
 C. John wants him to buy one
 D. he has quite a lot of money
5. According to the passage, John is _____.
 A. happy B. hungry
 C. angry D. excellent

六、根据音标及句意填写单词

1. My mother made a _____/kɑ:t/ for me yesterday.
 2. Don't _____/faut/ at the old. It's impolite.
 3. Did you go to the _____/'nætʃrəl/ History Museum.
 4. Why did Kate look so _____/skeəd/?
 5. He got lost in the mountain _____/'fɔ:st/.

七、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Uncle Li has quite a lot of _____ (sheep) on his farm.
 2. The mouse _____ (run) away quickly when it saw the cat.
 3. Look! Some butterflies _____ (fly) in the sky.
 4. I was very _____ (surprise) to hear the news.
 5. Jim closed the window _____ (keep) the wind out.

八、连词成句或根据图片、提示词补全问答

1. —Where did you go last weekend?
 —_____



2. a, weekend, I, busy, had (.)

3. —What does your sister do in the hospital?
 —_____ (work as, nurse)

4. —You look tired. What did you do last night?
 —_____



5. they, did, play, computer games, on the weekend (?)

九、从方框中选择合适的句子补全短文

When we buy a house, we all want to have nice neighbors, because most of us think that it is helpful to live with some good neighbors. 1
 The answers are different from people to people. Here are my answers.

2 If our neighbors try to know more about our life, what will we feel? He or she may also talk with others about our life. Do you want to live with him or her any more? The answer is "No". 3 And we want to move away quickly.

Next, a good neighbor is always ready to give us a hand when we need him or her. For example, if we are not at home, our good neighbors will watch our house for us.

Finally, a good neighbor should love the environment(环境). 4 Good neighbors should keep the place clean, because the good environment can make us comfortable(舒服)and happy.

5 I hope everyone will have good neighbors and live a happy life.

- A. We will feel very sad to have this kind of neighbor.
 B. But what kind of neighbor is good?
 C. What do you think of your neighbors?
 D. They never put rubbish (垃圾) here and there.
 E. We can make friends with our neighbors.
 F. First, it is very important to respect(尊敬) each other.
 G. I think we all should learn to be good neighbors.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
 4. _____ 5. _____

十、书面表达

假如你是王林,在本周的英语口语课上,你要和同学们分享你的一次愉快的假期旅行经历。请根据以下要点提示写一篇约 70 词的短文。

提示:

1. When did you go on a trip?
 2. Where did you go?
 3. Who did you go with?
 4. What did you do there?
 5. How do you like your trip?

期 末 测 试

(考试时间 100 分钟, 满分 120 分)

第 I 卷(选择题 共 80 分)

一、听力测试(15 分)

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. What do they want to see?



2. What is Tom doing?



3. Where does the woman want to go?



4. How's the weather?



5. What does Lucy often do?



(二)在录音中,你将听到一段对话及五个问题。请根据对话内容及问题选择正确答案。(对话及问题读两遍)

6. A. Great. B. Not good. C. Terrible.
7. A. New York. B. Tokyo. C. Paris.
8. A. Visited the museum.
B. Went swimming.
C. Visited friends.
9. A. Because she didn't have any money.
B. Because things were very expensive.
C. Because she didn't go to the store.
10. A. She met nobody.
B. She met a Chinese actor.
C. She met a Japanese musician.

(三)在录音中,你将听到一篇短文及五个问题。请根据短文内容及问题选择正确答案。(短文及问题读两遍)

11. A. China. B. Australia. C. the USA.
12. A. 13. B. 14. C. 15.
13. A. It's busy. B. It's interesting.
C. It's beautiful.
14. A. Goes shopping. B. Watches TV.
C. Does homework.
15. A. Because she can relax.
B. Because it's healthy.
C. Because she lives near the sea.

二、单项选择(15 分)

从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中,选出一个最佳答案。

16. —It's windy today. Let's fly _____ kite together, Jack.
—Good idea.
A. an B. a C. the D. /
17. —Excuse me. Are you a(n) _____?
—Yes, I can show you around Furong Street.
A. doctor B. cook C. actor D. guide
18. —Jenny, I can't go fishing with you _____.
I have too much homework this weekend.
—That's too bad.
A. so B. but C. because D. and
19. —Carol, would you like some chicken soup?
—Yes. It _____ really nice.
A. feels B. looks C. tastes D. sounds
20. —Tom, we can't cross the river by boat. The river runs too _____.
—I think so.
A. easily B. hardly C. luckily D. quickly
21. —Kelly, _____ did you go on vacation?
—I went to Xinjiang with my family.
A. how B. what C. where D. who
22. —My parents always tell me _____ lots of vegetables and fruit.
—What a good habit! They're good for your health.
A. eats B. eating C. eat D. to eat
23. —_____ you paint?



- Yes, I can. So I want to join the art club.
A. May B. Must C. Can D. Would
24. —Hi, Jack! How's it going?
—_____ We are having a great time in the water park.
A. Terrible. B. It's boring.
C. It's a good idea. D. Pretty good.
25. —Where is Jack?
—Oh, he _____ for an English test.
A. studies B. studied
C. is studying D. studying
26. —Did you go boating or visit a museum last weekend?
—_____ I am interested in science.
A. No, I didn't. B. I visited a museum.
C. I went boating. D. Yes, I did.
27. —Tom, _____ read in bed. It's bad for your eyes.
—OK, Mum.
A. don't B. doesn't
C. didn't D. can't
28. Don't _____ late at night next time.
A. stay up B. put up
C. eat out D. go out
29. —Dad, can you teach me how _____ a model plane?
—Sure, no problem.
A. make B. to make
C. made D. making
30. —Excuse me, can I sit here?
—_____, the child. It's for the old.
A. Yes, please B. No, thanks
C. I'm afraid not D. I hope so

三、完形填空(15分)

阅读短文,从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中,选出一个能填入文章中相应空白处的最佳答案。

Summer vacation is coming. Do you have any plans for yourself?

The Smiths will take a vacation next weekend. At first, they 31 about going to Beijing. As they went there three times, there's nothing 32 for them. This time, they want to go 33 different. 34 are they going then? "I want to go to Jiuzhaigou," said Tom. "But it's quite 35 from here and we have only two 36," Mary disagreed. "I think we should go somewhere near here." "Why not go to Qingdao? I want to enjoy the 37 air and beautiful

sunshine. And I know that Tom likes 38 photos there." And at last they decided 39 to Qingdao. Qingdao is famous 40 its beautiful beaches.

They are leaving 41 Friday evening and staying there for two days. On the first day, they are going to the 42 to see the dolphins. On the 43 day, they are going to the beach and going 44 there. They are going to have a picnic on the beautiful beach, too. They are sure that they will 45 themselves in Qingdao.

31. A. knew B. looked C. thought D. talked
32. A. new B. boring
C. healthy D. old
33. A. someone B. something
C. anything D. somewhere
34. A. What B. Where C. When D. How
35. A. behind B. long C. far D. near
36. A. weeks B. months C. years D. days
37. A. fresh B. delicious
C. cold D. dirty
38. A. making B. talking
C. putting D. taking
39. A. went B. to go C. going D. goes
40. A. to B. about C. for D. at
41. A. in B. on C. at D. to
42. A. zoo B. restaurant
C. shop D. town
43. A. first B. second C. third D. fourth
44. A. climbing B. swimming
C. skating D. shopping
45. A. like B. stay C. enjoy D. study

四、补全对话(5分)

阅读对话,从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中,选出一个最佳答案完成对话。

A: Hi, glad to see you again, Fred!

B: Me, too.

A: How was your vacation, Fred?

B: 46 I went to Qingdao with my parents.

A: Cool! Tell me something interesting, please.

B: 47

A: What did you do in Qingdao?

B: First, we visited my cousin. Then we went to the beach and ate lots of seafood.

A: 48

B: It is interesting. It has all kinds of marine animals from around the world.

A: 49



B: Yes, I saw a famous star and took some photos with him in May Fourth Square.

A: Wow, that's great! Can you show me the photos?

B: Sure. 50

A: Thanks.

46. A. I'm tired. B. It was great.
C. I like it very much. D. I don't like it at all.

47. A. Sure. B. Of course not.
C. No, I can't. D. Yes, I can.

48. A. Where is Qingdao Underwater World?
B. What is Qingdao Underwater World?
C. What do you think of Qingdao Underwater World?
D. Why is Qingdao Underwater World?

49. A. Who did you meet in Qingdao?
B. What did you do in Qingdao?
C. Did you see any movie stars in Qingdao?
D. Where did you visit in Qingdao?

50. A. You're welcome. B. It's not here.
C. I don't think so. D. Here you are.

五、阅读理解(30分)

阅读下列短文,然后从每题 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出一个能回答所提问题或完成所给句子的最佳答案。

A

Today is Sunday. My friends are talking happily.

Sue: My dream neighborhood has a underwater(水下的) library. We can walk to the library through a tunnel(隧道). We can watch all kinds of fish when we are reading in the library.

Leo: My dream neighborhood has a very big garden. I can play games and climb trees with my dad in the garden. In summer, I can sit under a big tree and read my favorite book. In winter, I can make snowmen with my brothers in it. There are different kinds of flowers in the garden, too.

Sam: In my dream neighborhood, there is a great restaurant. In the restaurant, I can taste food from all over the world. And if I want, I can make meals with my mom in the restaurant.

David: I like watching movies. In my dream neighborhood, there is a big cinema. I can watch many old movies in the cinema and the movies are all free. Of course, I can watch many new movies there, too.

51. When Sue reads in the library, she wants to _____.
A. watch fish B. listen to music

C. drink some milk D. talk with her friends

52. What does Leo want to do in the garden?
①play games ②climb trees ③do some reading
④drink tea ⑤make snowmen

A. ①②③④ B. ①③④⑤
C. ①②③⑤ D. ②③④⑤

53. What do we know about Sam?
A. He lives in a good neighborhood.
B. He often helps his mom make meals.
C. He has a great restaurant in his neighborhood.
D. He wants to taste food from all over the world.

54. Which of the following is TRUE?
A. Sue wants to go to the library by boat.
B. Leo wants to make snowmen with his cousins.
C. Sam wants the restaurant to be big and beautiful.
D. David hopes he can watch free movies in the cinema.

55. What are the writer's friends talking about?
A. Their dream neighborhood.
B. Their favorite place.
C. Their weekend.
D. Their life.

B

Little Mike's grandmother died(去逝) weeks ago. He missed her very much. One afternoon Mike went to the city park where his grandmother used to go(过去常去). There he saw an old lady. She looked very kind. She was sitting there, watching birds. Little Mike went up and sat next to her. He took out his food and drinks and gave some to her. She smiled at him. Her smile was very sweet and Mike wanted to see it again. She seemed to understand him, so once again she smiled. Mike was very happy.

They sat there all the afternoon, eating and talking. As it was dark, Mike got up to leave. Before he left, he hugged the old lady and she gave him her sweetest smile. When Mike got home, his mother was surprised by the happy look on his face. "I met an old lady in the park. Her smile was like the smile I used to see on grandmother's face."

The old lady also returned(返回) to her home happily. She told her son she had food and drinks with a little boy. "He was as lovely as Bill." She said. Her son was surprised, because she had never been so happy since Bill, her grandson, died weeks ago.

- Maybe those who don't like getting up early will not believe this, but it is really true. Scientists made a survey(调查) in about at least one thousand people, and then they found that early rising(早起) people had less disease than late rising people, and early rising people also look healthier than late rising people, and so on. So we may know early rising is helpful in more than one way. First, it helps to keep us healthy. We all need fresh air. But air is never so fresh as early in the morning. Besides, it is useful to do morning exercises or play sports in the early morning. Secondly, early rising helps us in our studies. In the morning we usually learn more quickly and find it easier to understand what we learn. Thirdly, early rising can give us a plan of our work for the day. We cannot work well without a good plan. Fourthly, early rising gives us enough time to get

D. doing exercise all day

We have an English teacher from the USA, Mr. Green. He 66 in China now. He 67 very well and is friendly to us. Last Sunday some of my classmates and I decided to go 68 him. After we got there, he cooked delicious food for us. We taught him how to make dumplings. He was interested in Chinese food. He 69 us some



table manners(礼仪). He said, "When they have dinner in a restaurant together, they usually keep quiet." When it was time for us to leave, I said to him, "70 to my home for dinner when you have time." He looked happy and agreed.

66. _____ 67. _____ 68. _____

69. _____ 70. _____

七、连词成句或根据提示词补全问答(10分)

71. — _____
—Because I think pandas are interesting.

72. — _____ (tigers)
—No, I don't. Because they are scary.

73. love dogs, Scott, because, they are, very cute
(.) (连词成句)

74. what animals, he, see, want to, does (?) (连词成句)

75. — _____
—Koalas are from Australia.

八、完成句子(5分)

根据汉语意思完成英语句子,每空一词。

76. 继续努力下去,你的梦想将实现。
Keep working hard and your dream will _____.

77. 别担心,用上地图,你就不会迷路了。
Don't worry and use the map, and you won't _____.

78. 北京园博会为游客准备的长凳、椅子是用回收利用的牛奶盒制成的。
The benches and chairs for visitors at Beijing Garden Expo are _____ recycled milk boxes.

79. 城际铁路开通后,从周边城市到济南用不了1小时。
After the opening of the inter-city railway, it took _____ an hour to get from the surrounding cities to Jinan.

80. 看完《诗词大会》这个精彩的节目,我无法用语言描述古诗词的美。
After watching the _____ program of Poetry Congress, I couldn't _____ the beauty of ancient poems in words.

九、补全短文(5分)

根据短文内容,从短文后的选项中选出能填入空白处的最佳选项。选项中有两项为多余选项。

Thirty years ago, my family was so poor that I didn't have enough money to go to school.

81 So one day, I walked into a bakery and asked for some bread to sell. At that time, I was 12 years old. 82 I had no money at all. But she gave me five loaves of bread and wished me good luck. I took the bread and went out to sell them. It took me all day, but I sold them all. 83 I felt that I was the happiest boy in the world as I walked home that evening. The next day, I went to a bicycle shop. I paid a deposit(定金) on a new bicycle. And then I started my job as a newspaper delivery(速递) boy.

Soon I could pay the rest of the money for the bicycle and the bike was mine. 84 Because I thought I did something useful for my family. Today I still work in a delivery business. I have a truck to send goods all over the country. I live in a beautiful house, but I don't ride a bicycle these days. I drive a nice large car. 85 But because she gave me the start, I have become a successful man. I'd like to show my thanks to her.

- A. I wanted to make money and buy a toy car for my brother.

B. I was so proud of myself.

C. A young lady served me that day.

D. I don't know who that young lady was.

E. At the end of the day, I had some money.

F. I wanted to do something for my family and me.

G. I got enough money and bought a house then.

81. _____ 82. _____ 83. _____

84. _____ 85. _____

十、书面表达(15分)

请根据以下提示,以 "My School Trip" 为题,写一篇 80 词左右的短文,以便参加学校组织的英语作文大赛。

具体内容:

1. 介绍你最难忘的一次校园旅行;
2. 叙述你在旅行中的经历、活动等;
3. 描述你的感受。

要求:

1. 可适当进行发挥;
2. 不得出现真实人名、校名、地名等相关信息。



Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

Section A

【重点突破】

- 思考: the
运用: (1) C (2) C (3) B
- 思考: 情态; 动词原形; can; can't
运用: (1) A (2) D (3) A
- 思考: 语言; to; with; about; to; to
运用: (1) speak (2) say (3) talking (4) tells
- 思考: to do
运用: (1) want; piano (2) wants to join (3) wants us to

【基础强化】

1. speak 2. draw 3. piano 4. club
5. chess
- 1~5 CDDCA 6~9 CCDA
1. sing 2. dancing 3. playing/to play
4. stories 5. me 6. dance 7. well
8. swimming 9. to join 10. pianos
1. Can you play the guitar?
2. I want to join the chess club.
3. What can you do?
4. Jane is good at telling stories.
5. Tom and Jill can dance very well.

五、1~5 CBDEA

【能力提升】

- 1~5 BCADB 6~10 CBCCD
1. Miss Zhang can teach us to play chess.
2. She can call Janice for more information.
3. He can go to the club every Friday afternoon.
4. I can call Sally at 302-6730 or send an e-mail to *music@×××.com*.

Section B

【重点突破】

- 思考: doing; to do
运用: (1) swimming/to swim

(2) playing/to play

- 思考: 句末; 实义动词; 肯定句
运用: (1) A (2) B (3) doesn't want; either
- 思考: 不定式/to do; to do
运用: (1) need; to teach (2) doesn't need to (3) us to come
- 思考: with; for; at
运用: (1) at (2) for (3) with
- 思考: 名词; 动词; with
运用: (1) with (2) (to) make (3) (to) sing

【基础强化】

1. weekend 2. helps 3. need
4. musician 5. teaches
- 1~5 AACBC 6~10 DBAAA
1. play the piano 2. call; at 3. Are; with
4. make friends 5. helps; with
1. with 2. at 3. also 4. with 5. free
1. You are very good at telling stories.
2. Please call Mrs. Miller at 555-3721.
3. We need you to help with sports for English-speaking students.
4. We need teachers for our music club.
5. Please talk to Mr. Zhang after class.
1. wants 2. has 3. play 4. sing
5. swim 6. speak 7. thinks 8. be

【能力提升】

- 1~5 CBDDB 6~10 ABCDB
- 1~5 CCACB

单元评估

- 1~5 BACAC 6~10 ACCAB
11. UK 12. fifteen/15 (years old)
13. piano 14. Friday 15. musician
- 1~5 DABCA 6~10 BCDCD
- 1~5 BABAA 6~10 CCDDDB
- 1~5 ACBDA
- 1~5 CBAAB
1. telling 2. Chinese 3. to join 4. speak
5. making friends
1. Can you play the guitar?



2. Lucy's brother can sing and dance.
3. Gina often helps her friend with math.
4. Are you good with children?
5. Can he play chess or play the drums?

八、1. strange

2. Earth monsters.
3. Nice things, balls from the trees and water.
4. a TV

九、One possible version:

Dear sir,

My name is Lucy. I'm 15 years old. I'm a student from No. 1 Middle School. I want to join the Beijing School Trip to help kids with sports, music and English. I play the guitar well. I can sing many songs and I can swim, too. I'm good at English. So I think I can be good with the kids.

I hope to get your letter soon.

Yours,
Lucy

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考:副词;日期; what time;时刻
运用:(1) What time (2) When
(3) What time
2. 思考:at; at; at; in; in; in; on; on
运用:(1) at (2) on (3) in (4) on (5) at
3. 思考:形容词;名词; to do
运用:(1) for lunch; to have lunch (2) A
4. 思考:结果; for
运用:(1) B (2) late for

【基础强化】

- 一、1. usually 2. never 3. exercises 4. funny
5. job 6. dressed
- 二、1~5 DBCCB 6~10 CAABC
- 三、1. I usually go to school at eight.
2. When does Lucy usually take a shower?
3. They work at a radio station.
4. Gina usually eats breakfast at nine.
5. I go to work at six, so I am never late for work.
- 四、1. from; to 2. late for 3. take; shower
4. gets dressed 5. funny; for

- 五、1. brush your teeth 2. has a good job
3. get up 4. get dressed

【能力提升】

- 六、1~5 DBCDA 6~10 CBCAB
- 七、1~5 BBCDA

Section B

【重点突破】

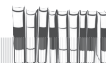
1. 思考: five o'clock; past; to; half; quarter
运用:(1) half past five (2) a quarter to ten
(3) six fifteen; seven o'clock
2. 思考:usually; sometimes; always; often; never
运用:(1) B (2) D (3) How often
3. 思考:否定;单数
运用:(1) either; or (2) either (3) comes
4. 思考:实义;形容
运用:(1) A (2) D

【基础强化】

- 一、1. tastes 2. quarter 3. Half 4. walks
5. clean
 - 二、1~5 ACDCA 6~10 DBCAA
 - 三、1. to play 2. quick; quickly 3. takes
4. plays 5. good
 - 四、1. either; or 2. lots of 3. do; homework
4. takes; walk 5. a quarter
 - 五、1~5 DBECA
- #### 【能力提升】
- 六、1~5 ABCDB 6~10 ADCAB
 - 七、1~5 CBDDA
 - 八、1. to know 2. am 3. play 4. running
5. tell

单元评估

- 一、1~5 ACBCA 6~10 BABCA
11. bread 12. bus 13. seven
14. basketball 15. family
- 二、1~5 BACDD 6~10 BACAA
- 三、1~5 ABDCE 6~10 BCADB
- 四、1~5 CABGE
- 五、1~5 ACDBC
- 六、1. either 2. quarter 3. dresses 4. usually
5. tastes
- 七、1. teeth 2. funny 3. brushes
4. I don't have much time for breakfast.
5. Why does your mother get up so early?
6. Please get dressed and go quickly.
- 八、1. eats breakfast 2. lunch



3. 放学后,她做作业并和其他孩子们一起玩耍。
4. What time does Linda go to bed?
5. At eight o'clock.

九、One possible version:

Dear Steve,

New school days start, so I am busy every day. I get up at six in the morning. Then I wash my face and brush my teeth. I have breakfast at six thirty, and then I go to school. I get to school at about seven forty. Class begins at eight. I have eight classes every day. At 12:00 I have lunch at school.

School is over at about five thirty in the afternoon. I have dinner at around seven. After dinner I do my homework. At nine, I take a shower and go to bed. Sometimes I feel tired, but I can learn a lot.

What about your school life? Write to me please.

Good luck!

Wang Hao

Unit 3 How do you get to school?

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考: how; how long; how far
运用: (1) how (2) how far (3) how (4) how long (5) how
2. 思考: 交通方式; by bus; take the train; drive a car; ride a bike; get to; at; in
运用: (1) D (2) C (3) D
3. 思考: to do; (in) doing
运用: (1) A (2) takes; to work
4. 思考: hundred; hundreds of
运用: (1) Hundreds of (2) hundred (3) hundreds of

【基础强化】

- 一、1. subway 2. rides 3. kilometers 4. river 5. hundred
- 二、1~5 BBBBA 6~10 CCDCA
- 三、1. I go to school by bike. /I ride to school.
2. Does he walk to school? /Does he get to school on foot?
3. No, I don't. I go to school by bus every day. /I take the bus to school every day.
4. It takes 15 minutes to get to school.

5. How far is it from your home to school?
6. Jack needs about an hour to get home.
7. Does your father drive his car to work every day?
8. Do your friends ride their bikes to school?

- 四、1. How long 2. get to 3. What
4. How far 5. How

五、I'm Rick. I usually go to school by bike. Jim also rides his bike to school. David's home is far from school, so he takes the bus to school every morning. But Tom and Jim walk to school every morning. Because their houses are near school.

【能力提升】

- 六、1~5 ABDAB 6~10 DABCD
七、1~5 ABBCB
八、1~5 BAEDC

Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考: it; 单数
运用: (1) A
(2) To read books; Reading books
2. 思考: 不能; 两者; 三者
运用: (1) B (2) D (3) B (4) B
3. 思考: 定语; 表语; go across
运用: (1) B (2) B (3) C
4. 思考: to do; of
运用: (1) to cross (2) of

【基础强化】

- 一、1. cross 2. leave 3. between 4. bridge
5. 8-year-old 6. afraid 7. true 8. like
- 二、1~5 BBCDA 6~10 AABDC
- 三、1. come true 2. It takes 3. How far
4. between; and 5. How long
6. five hundred 7. 11-year-old; crosses
8. What; think
- 四、1. lives 2. from 3. gets 4. breakfast
5. leaves 6. rides 7. stop 8. minutes
9. takes 10. usually

【能力提升】

- 五、1~5 DBCDA 6~10 CBCAC
六、1~3 BDA

单元评估

- 一、1~5 CBABB 6~10 CABCB
11. twelve 12. school 13. car 14. three



15. kite

二、1~5 DDABC 6~10 BDBBA

三、1~5 ABCCA 6~10 DBDBD

四、1~5 CDAEB

五、1~5 ACABB

六、1. come true 2. riding 3. How far 4. takes
5. quickly

七、1. I go to school by bike. /I ride a bike to school.

2. How long

3. Miss Brown usually goes to work on foot.

4. The farmer crosses a river every day.

5. It is Jim's dream to have a new bike.

八、1. safely; on time

2. Free Home to School Transport. 3. B

4. 一条安全的公路通常会配备交通信号灯,并且应该很干净。

九、One possible version:

Dear Jack,

You have three ways to get to Xinhua Cinema. First, you can walk to the cinema. It takes about 40 minutes. Second, you can take a taxi to the cinema. It usually takes about 10 minutes, but you need to pay about 15 *yuan*. Third, you can take the bus to the cinema. The bus ride takes you about 20 minutes. You need to pay 1 *yuan* and walk about 3 minutes after you get off the bus.

Which one do you think is the best?

Yours,

Li Hua

Unit 4 Don't eat in class.

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考: arrive; at; in; at; in; be late for

运用: (1) A (2) arrives/reaches; to

(3) arrive late/be late

2. 思考: wear; put on; 动作; dressed

运用: (1) have; wear (2) C

(3) Do we have to wear uniforms at school?

3. 思考: bring; take

运用: (1) B (2) brings; to (3) take; with

4. 思考: 祈使句; 原形; Don't

运用: (1) Don't be (2) Don't make

(3) Don't speak; be

【基础强化】

一、1. rules 2. Don't fight 3. dining

4. hallways 5. talking 6. uniforms

7. arrive 8. relax 9. quiet 10. fights

二、1~5 CCABB

三、1. Don't listen to music in class.

2. Do you fight with your friends?

3. Can we wear our clothes at school?

4. No talking! /Don't talk in the hospital.

四、1. Can we wear a hat in class?

2. You must be on time for school.

3. Does David have to wear a uniform at school?

4. You don't have to come to school every day.

5. Jack has to be quiet in the library.

五、1. have to 2. eat in class

3. can; music class

4. arrive late/be late; Sorry

5. important; on time

六、1. hallways 2. dining hall 3. arrive

4. listen 5. wear

【能力提升】

七、1~5 BABCB 6~10 BACBD

八、1~5 DCADC

九、1~5 EDCAB

Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考: many; much; too

运用: (1) A (2) too much (3) too many

2. 思考: leave; forget

运用: (1) leave (2) leave (3) C

3. 思考: either; too; also

运用: (1) either (2) also (3) too

4. 思考: 严格的, 严厉的; be strict with sb.; be strict in sth.

运用: (1) strict with (2) with; in (3) D

【基础强化】

一、1. practice 2. sports 3. listen 4. rules

5. outside

二、1. talking 2. to bring 3. make/to make

4. be 5. working

三、1~5 AACBA

四、1. Don't exercise in the hallways.

2. You can not eat in class.

3. Can Gina wear a hat in class?

4. Li Chen has to go to school in the afternoon.

5. They have to listen to music in the music room.

- 五、1. rules 2. wash 3. reading 4. joins
5. lucky
六、1. have to 2. has to; after 3. can; dining
4. can; in music 5. have to

【能力提升】

- 七、1~5 BDABC 6~10 ABDCC
八、1. Little Peter is nine years old.
2. Because he likes watching TV in the evening and goes to bed late.
3. 匆匆去学校
4. 彼得,第一节课你迟到了十分钟。
5. 路牌/路标
九、1. studies 2. to learn 3. got 4. clean
5. did

单元评估

- 一、1~5 BACBC 6~10 CABCB
11. library 12. noisy 13. listen 14. food
15. take
二、1~5 DCBAA 6~10 DCACB
三、1~5 BACCB 6~10 AABDB
四、1~5 CABED
五、1~5 CBBDA
六、1. relax 2. quiet 3. hallways 4. fight
5. outside 6. wash 7. dining
8. important 9. remember
七、1. on time 2. Don't be 3. to clean
4. practice playing the piano
5. Our English teacher is strict with us.
6. be/keep quiet
八、1. rules 2. because 3. wash 4. with
5. never
九、One possible version:
Dear Lucy,

How are you now? I'm not happy because there are too many rules for me at home.

I have to get up at 6 o'clock every morning. I eat breakfast at home because my mom always says, "Don't eat outside!" I have to do my homework first when I get back home from school. I can't watch TV on school nights. Then on Saturdays, I have to learn to play the piano. And I have to clean my room on Sundays.

The rules are terrible but my parents say they are good for me. So I should follow them.

Yours,
Li Kun

Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

Section A

【重点突破】

- 思考:有点儿,有几分; a little; 一种;各种各样的; different kinds of
运用:(1) B (2) kind of (3) kinds of
- 思考:Why not do...?
运用:(1) take (2) D (3) Why don't
- 思考:很,非常; lots of; 许多,很多
运用:(1) D (2) a lot (3) C
- 思考:You are right.; All right.; That's all right.
运用:(1) B (2) you're right
(3) That's all right.

【基础强化】

- 一、1. places 2. over 3. water 4. trees
5. scary
二、1. animals 2. swim 3. does; want
4. interesting 5. first 6. to see 7. pandas
8. beautiful
三、1~5 BAACD 6~9 BCDC
四、1. favorite animals 2. pandas; kind of
3. lazy; all day 4. walk on; legs
5. How/What about
五、1~5 DAEBC

【能力提升】

- 六、1~5 BADDB 6~10 CACCB
七、1. Dale 和汤姆不上学。
2. 因为在动物园里有一只大象。
3. She is really beautiful.
4. She is from Africa. /She comes from Africa.
5. 他们想和她(大象)玩。

Section B

【重点突破】

- 思考:forget to do sth.; forget doing sth.; remember; remember to do sth.; remember doing sth.
运用:(1) to bring (2) to do (3) meeting
- 思考:in danger; out of danger; dangerous
运用:(1) D (2) in danger (3) dangerous
- 思考:cut down; cut up; cut off
运用:(1) A (2) cut down (3) D
- 思考:由象牙制成;由……制成;be made in; be made into



运用:(1) C (2) made of (3) from; of

【基础强化】

一、1~5 CAAAC 6~10 BCDBC

二、1. danger 2. symbols 3. because
4. Australia 5. place

三、1. does 2. to play 3. made 4. first
5. to see 6. play 7. to turn; leaving
8. playing 9. to follow 10. sleep

四、1. Why do you like pandas?
2. Where is an elephant from?
3. What can the dog do?
4. I don't like giraffes.
5. We must save the trees and not buy things made of ivory.

五、1. good luck 2. in; danger 3. cut down
4. get lost/are lost 5. made of

【能力提升】

六、1~5 DBADA 6~10 BABBA

七、1~5 DCBDB

单元评估

一、1~5 ABCBC 6~10 CBCCA

11. animals 12. dangerous 13. clever
14. smart 15. koalas

二、1~5 ACDBD 6~10 AABCB

三、1~5 AABCA 6~10 CCBBA

四、1~5 CEABD

五、1~5 CBCAD

六、1. sleeps 2. danger 3. symbols 4. forget
5. friendly 6. cut down 7. made 8. first
9. Don't fight 10. quiet

七、1. Why do you like pandas?
2. Do you like lions?
3. Scott loves dogs because they are very cute.
4. What animals does he want to see?
5. Where are koalas from?

八、1. tell 2. looks 3. has 4. to play
5. is singing

九、1. She is 12 years old.
2. from; to
3. my father likes pandas.
4. 她认为它们既可爱又有趣。
5. animals in the zoo

十、One possible version:

I have a cat. Its name is Mimi. It's black and white. It has two big eyes. It's very smart and interesting. But sometimes it's kind of

lazy. Because it sleeps for 6 hours in the day. It likes eating fish very much. And fish is its favorite food. It likes playing with a ball. After school, I like playing with Mimi.

This is my cat. I like it very much.

Unit 6 I'm watching TV.

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 运用:(1) is running (2) is reading
(3) are talking

2. 思考: for; wait for

运用:(1) are; waiting for; waiting for (2) B
(3) swims; swimming; is swimming

3. 思考: This is...; Who's that?

运用:(1) C (2) B (3) C

4. 思考: see; look; watch; read

运用:(1) ①see ②Look ③Watching
④read (2) B (3) is watching

【基础强化】

一、A. wearing; meeting; looking; listening

B. coming; having; skating; making

C. swimming; putting; shopping; forgetting

D. dying

二、1~5 BCBAB

三、1. are eating 2. are playing 3. is cleaning
4. is sleeping 5. telling; telling; is telling

四、1. Look, David is talking on the phone!

2. Are the boys playing computer games?

3. Listen. Li Ying is singing a beautiful song.

4. Do you want to join me for dinner?

5. Gina usually cleans the desk after dinner.

五、1~5 BEADC

六、Look! My father is working on the computer.
My mother is cooking. My sister is helping mom with cooking.

【能力提升】

七、1~5 CDBAB 6~10 CCABB

八、1~5 ABBBA

Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考: game

运用:(1) B (2) A (3) B

2. 思考: 否定; another; the other



运用:(1) D (2) ① some ② any (3) C

3. 思考:miss; misses; wish; wishes

运用:(1) D (2) A

4. 思考:talk to; talk with; talk about; tell stories; speak; say

运用:(1) is talking (2) B (3) talk about

【基础强化】

一、1~5 CDAAD 6~10 ACBCC

二、1. men 2. is singing 3. is cleaning

4. to buy 5. look 6. are eating

7. Does; is reading 8. have 9. are talking

10. is watching

三、1. We are watching TV.

2. Are you cooking with your mom/helping your mom with cooking?

3. She is washing the dishes.

4. Is your grandpa reading newspaper?

5. I'm cleaning the house.

四、1. isn't playing; is doing

2. Is; dancing; she is

3. What is; doing; is washing; clothes

4. Are; using; are exercising

【能力提升】

五、1~5 BDABB 6~10 DBCCD

六、1~5 CDADA

单元评估

一、1~5 CABAC 6~10 BCBAB

11. sixteen/16 12. pears 13. Fifteen/15

14. dumplings 15. six/6:00

二、1~5 CBBCC 6~10 DAADB

三、1~5 BCADC 6~10 BDADB

四、1~5 DACBA

五、1. are swimming 2. are playing

3. are reading 4. is eating

5. are singing

六、1. newspaper 2. any other 3. dancing

4. clean/to clean 5. is sleeping

七、1. He is playing the piano.

2. Bob makes dinner every day.

3. Look, Jenny is cleaning the house!

4. Jack lives with an American family in New York now.

5. What are you doing?

八、1. 安娜正在看一个有趣的电视节目。

2. Now she is talking about this topic with Lisa and Anna.

3. B 4. C

5. They are still at Lisa's house.

九、One possible version:

Today is Saturday. It's 10:00 now. My mom is doing the dishes. My sister is doing her homework. My brother is also busy doing homework. Look, my father is reading books. He likes reading very much. What about my grandpa? He is watching a basketball game on TV in the living room. My grandma is having a picnic with my little sister. What a happy family!

期中测试

一、1~5 BACCB 6~10 ABABA

11~15 ABCBA

二、16~20 CDBCA 21~25 ACBAB

26~30 CAAAB

三、31~35 CBACD 36~40 BCADD

四、41~45 DBABB

五、46~50 DBAAD 51~55 BCACC

56~60 ACCAB

六、61. forget 62. lost 63. danger

64. cut down 65. save 66. tell 67. looks

68. has 69. to play 70. is singing

七、71. I go to school by bus.

72. How long does it take you to get home?

73. Miss Brown usually goes to work on foot.

74. The farmer crosses a river every day.

75. It is Jim's dream to have a new bike.

八、76. What club 77. What; to 78. too many

79. with; after 80. is taking

九、81. from; to 82. Spring Festival

83. Because they can wear new clothes and get red pocket money from their grandparents, parents, uncles or aunts. (答对一条给0.5分)

84. 如果你吃到里面有硬币的水饺,来年你就会有好运气。

85. People play cards, visit relatives and friends, and set off firecrackers.

十、One possible version:

Dear Peter,

Thanks for your e-mail. I am very happy to tell you something about myself. I like to play the guitar and I can play it well. Every morning, I get up at 6:00. At 7:00, I usually



ride a bike to school, because it is far from my home. And I get home at 5:00 p. m. I like pandas because they are cute and smart. These days, I am reading a book about pandas. I want to help and save them. I wish to get your e-mail soon.

Yours,
Sarah

Unit 7 It's raining!

Section A

【重点突破】

- 思考: How's the weather?; What's the weather like?; weather; cloudy; sunny; rainy; snowy; windy
运用: (1) B (2) What's; like (3) C
- 思考: How's it going?; How's everything going? Good!; Pretty good; Not bad; Just so-so; Terrible
运用: (1) C (2) C (3) How's it going
- 思考: message; give sb. a message; leave a message for sb.; news; information
运用: (1) A (2) take; message (3) B
- 思考: could; can; call sb. back; problem; question
运用: (1) C (2) A

【基础强化】

- 一、1~5 CCDBA 6~10 DDBDC
- 二、1. windy 2. sunny 3. snowy/snowing
4. cloudy 5. raining
- 三、1. It's snowing/snowy.
2. He is playing soccer with his friends.
3. They are having a party.
4. I usually read interesting books.
- 四、1. 天气怎么样;在下雨
2. What's; right now; is playing; plays
3. Is; talking; again 4. take a message

【能力提升】

- 五、1~5 BADCA 6~10 CBACD
- 六、1~5 ABDCE
- 七、1~5 BDECA

Section B

【重点突破】

- 思考: have a great time; have fun; enjoy oneself; visit; visitor; visitors
运用: (1) having; time (2) visit (3) visitors
- 思考: relax; relaxing; relaxed

运用: (1) relaxing (2) C (3) C

3. 思考: holiday; go on a vacation; vacation; holiday; holiday

运用: (1) are on (2) B

4. 思考: rainy; rain; raining; heavy; heavily

运用: (1) A (2) is raining (3) B

【基础强化】

- 一、1~5 DBCDB 6~10 ADCBB
- 二、1. windy; cloudy 2. rainy; sunny
3. is playing; are having
4. watches; is reading
5. to call; calls
- 三、1. How is the weather in your village?
2. Is Jack having a good time at the party?
3. Are you doing your homework or watching TV?
4. Tom is playing tennis with his brother.
5. The old man always sits by the pool.
- 四、1. on vacation 2. group; playing
3. dancing; having; time
4. relaxed; relaxing 5. lying on
- 五、1. It's hot/sunny. We are on the beach.
2. It's cool/sunny. They are climbing the mountains.
3. It's snowy. We are making a snowman.

【能力提升】

- 六、1~5 TFTTF
- 七、1~5 BDACA 6~10 BDACB

单元评估

- 一、1~5 ACBAC 6~10 BACBA
11. raining 12. wet 13. good
14. clothes 15. clever
- 二、1~5 BBCCD 6~10 DBCDD
- 三、1~5 DBCAD 6~10 BCDAB
- 四、1~5 FECAD
- 五、1~5 CBBCC
- 六、1. windy 2. message 3. vacation/holiday
4. hard 5. again
- 七、1. countries 2. is raining 3. talks
4. sunny 5. take
- 八、1. How's the weather?
2. They're eating.
3. is talking on the phone
4. Can you help me take a message for her?
5. They are watching TV with their parents in the room.



- 九、1. It was snowy.
2. She visited the Palace Museum and the Great Wall. And she took a lot of photos.
3. 她们决定自己做饭。
4. 糟糕的
5. Because she put too much pepper.

十、One possible version:

Dear Mary,

How time flies! I have been in Jinan for a year.

I love Jinan so much. Do you want to know the weather in Jinan? Now let me tell you something about the weather here. In Jinan, spring is very short and warm. In summer, it's very hot, but it often rains. We often go swimming in the river. In autumn, the weather is very dry and cool. We often go to the farm to work with the farmers and help them. In winter, it's very cold, and sometimes it's snowy and windy. I like swimming, so summer is my favorite season. And Jinan in summer is the most beautiful.

Yours,
Tim

Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

Section A

【重点突破】

- 思考: is; are; is;就近原则
运用:(1) D (2) B (3) A
- 运用:(1) there; near; park
(2) Go straight (3) D
- 思考: pay; spend; cost; take; spend; spend... on...; spend... (in) doing; cost; sth. cost sb...; It takes sb... to do sth.; pay for...
运用:(1) spends (2) takes (3) cost
(4) paid
- 思考: on; under; in; beside; near; next to; in front of; behind; across from; between... and...
运用:1. in 2. station 3. goes 4. far
5. bike 6. to 7. turns 8. crossing
9. between 10. across

【基础强化】

- 一、1. town 2. street 3. bank 4. pay
5. office 6. hotel 7. behind 8. across
二、1~5 ADCBC 6~8 ADA

- There are some desks in the classroom.
- The library is across from the bank.
- There are some people dancing in the square.
- There is a pay phone near the hospital.
- Mike's house is between the school and the hotel.

- 四、1. in front of 2. post office 3. far from
4. next to 5. across from 6. are; dancing

五、1~5 BGADE

【能力提升】

六、1~5 DABDB 6~10 CDCDD

七、1~5 DDBAD

- 八、1. taxi 2. busy 3. between 4. behind
5. hungry

Section B

【重点突破】

- 思考: along; down; turn left; turn right; on one's left/right
运用:(1) B (2) Turn left (3) driving
- 思考: watch sb. doing sth.; watch sb. do sth.; see sb. do/doing sth.; hear sb. do/doing sth.
运用:(1) see; practicing (2) play with
- 思考: enjoy; enjoy doing; have a good time; have fun
运用:(1) A (2) D (3) playing
- 思考: 主; 宾; 定; 状
运用:(1) C (2) in order to

【基础强化】

- 一、1. finishing 2. walking 3. themselves
4. easily 5. climbing 6. spends 7. banks
8. to do 9. goes 10. reading

二、1~5 BCBAC 6~8 CAA

- 三、1. Turn right
2. spend my spare time
3. when I fight with
4. To keep healthy/fit
5. across from the park

四、1~5 CGDFE

【能力提升】

五、1~5 BCCAB 6~10 ACBCA

六、1~5 CAEBD

单元评估

- 一、1~5 CABBA 6~10 BCBAC
11. bookstore 12. hotel 13. Behind
14. right 15. restaurant



二、1~5 AABAD 6~10 BBCBC

三、1~5 DBCAD 6~10 BCDAD

四、1~5 BGAFD

五、1~5 CAADD 6~10 TFFTF

六、1. along 2. spend 3. crossing 4. behind

5. enjoys

七、1. money 2. spends 3. turn 4. easily

5. having

八、1. across from 2. between; and

3. To get

4. It takes me two hours to finish the work.

5. I like to walk in the mountains because the air is clean.

九、One possible version:

Dear Jack,

Welcome to my home! After you get out of the airport, you can take the No. 30 bus and get off at the last stop. Walk along Fenghua Road and turn left at the second crossing. After about ten minutes, you can see the Sunshine Supermarket. My home is behind the supermarket. You can't miss it. My home is not far from the sea. The sea is very beautiful. I hope you will have a good trip.

Yours,
Wang Li

Unit 9 What does he look like?

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考: look like; be like; take after

运用: (1) looks like (2) is; like (3) take after

2. 思考: be of medium build; age; size; color; height; shape; kind; way

运用: (1) C (2) B

3. 思考: a little; a bit; a little bit; kind of; a bit of

运用: (1) C (2) D (3) D

4. 思考: wear; put on; be in; dress

运用: (1) ① put on ② is wearing ③ is in

④ put on (2) C (3) A

【基础强化】

一、1~5 CACBC 6~9 BCCD

二、1. does; look 2. will meet 3. wears

4. first 5. like; likes

三、1. look like 2. is of medium build 3. be a little

4. has; wears 5. Is; or

6. wears a pair of glasses

四、1. What does your mother look like?

2. She has long hair.

3. He has a long nose with a hat.

4. The man has short hair and wears glasses.

5. What do your uncle and aunt like to wear?

五、1. are going to the movies 2. a little

3. His 4. in front of 5. doesn't know

6. looks like 7. has 8. wears glasses

9. or 10. of medium height

【能力提升】

六、1~5 DCBAD 6~10 ACBDB

七、1~5 DCACD

八、1~5 CBAGD

Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考: forget; doing; to do

运用: (1) B (2) B

2. 思考: same; the same as; be different from; way; in this/that way

运用: (1) B (2) looks like/takes after (3) B

3. 思考: at last; finally; at first; at the end of

运用: (1) In the end (2) D

4. 思考: is/are; have/has; wear

运用: (1) B (2) B (3) A

【基础强化】

一、1~5 CCBAB 6~9 BBDA

二、1. singer 2. differently 3. artist

4. criminal 5. to be 6. is 7. look

8. playing 9. has; have 10. ways

三、1. in newspaper; on 2. draws; of

3. isn't tall; wears glasses 4. a little

5. First of all; on time

四、1. We all like Jim because he is really funny.

2. Does your sister like to wear dresses?

3. Joe has long straight brown hair and big eyes.

4. Let me tell you what he looks like.

5. Many people don't always see things the same way.

五、1. Look 2. is 3. has 4. doesn't wear

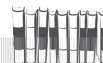
5. playing 6. is playing

六、略

【能力提升】

七、1~5 CBACC 6~10 BAACA

八、1~5 ACBAD



单元评估

- 一、1~5 BABBB 6~10 BBABB
 11. build 12. round 13. telling 14. curly
 15. stops
 二、1~5 BCBA 6~10 ADACB
 三、1~5 ACDCC 6~10 BABBC
 四、1~5 BAAAB
 五、1~5 ACDDDB
 六、1. curly 2. tall 3. cinema 4. medium
 5. describe
 七、1. height 2. to close 3. glasses 4. really
 5. putting
 八、1. He has brown hair and wears glasses.
 2. She has a round face.
 3. Is he tall or short?
 4. My favorite teacher is very handsome.
 九、1. He's an actor.
 2. She has big eyes and long curly hair.
 3. 当我外出时我会戴上酷酷的眼镜。
 4. I'm of medium build.
 5. Peter is a bank clerk.
 十、One possible version:

We have two new teachers in class this term. One is our English teacher Miss Green from England. She is 23 years old. And she is thin and of medium height. She has curly blonde hair and often wears sunglasses. She likes reading, dancing, and playing chess. The other is our math teacher Mr. White from America. He is seven years older than Miss Green. He is short and a little bit heavy but he is very funny and popular with us. And he likes playing basketball, doing kung fu, and telling jokes. We all like our new teachers.

Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考: want; to do; to do; not
 运用: (1) please; thanks (2) to go (3) B
 2. 思考: 可数; 不可数; children; men; 单数; of; a cup of tea (2) tomato; men; women
 运用: (1) potatoes (2) tomato
 (3) two cups of (4) apple; women
 3. 思考: all kinds of; kind of

运用: (1) What kind (2) all kinds of
 (3) kind of

4. 思考: 大小; medium

运用: (1) A (2) C

【基础强化】

- 一、1. medium 2. special 3. cabbage 4. order
 5. would
 二、1~5 CADAA 6~10 ACCDB
 三、1. is 2. bowls 3. to watch 4. kinds
 5. any
 四、1. kind of 2. take your order
 3. would also like 4. beef; with
 5. What size
 五、1. I'd like noodles.
 2. Is there any meat in the soup?
 3. Beef with rice.
 4. What kind of noodles would you like?
 5. What size would you like?
 六、1. He doesn't like onions or meat.
 2. Would you like some fish?
 3. My mother likes pancakes and dumplings.
 4. We would also like gongbao chicken and mapo tofu.

【能力提升】

- 七、1~5 BDACB 6~10 ADCBD
 八、1~5 BCBDB

Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考: and; 选择; 祈使
 运用: (1) C (2) don't; or (3) B (4) B
 2. 思考: from; same; as; difference
 运用: (1) from (2) the same as
 (3) differences
 3. 思考: 单数; 复数
 运用: (1) C (2) is (3) are
 4. 思考: 动词; make; to do
 运用: (1) B (2) B

【基础强化】

- 一、1. dumplings 2. wish 3. fish 4. popular
 5. different
 二、1~5 ABCCC 6~10 CCCDA
 三、1. A large number 2. come true 3. luck
 4. on 5. blow out
 四、1. What do you do or eat on your birthday?
 2. The child with the candy is lucky.
 3. They are symbols of life and good luck.



4. All the birthday food may be different.
5. In many countries, people have birthday cakes with candles.

- 五、1. The number; candles 2. getting popular
3. blows out; come true 4. cut up
5. good luck

- 六、Today is Gina and Lili's birthday. They have a birthday party. They make a wish and blow out the candles. They eat delicious birthday cakes. Their friends are singing and dancing for them. What a happy time they are having!

【能力提升】

七、1~5 BCDCB 6~10 ABCDA

八、1~5 BBACA

单元评估

一、1~5 BCABA 6~10 BABBB

11. beef 12. cabbage 13. 6 14. chicken
15. 8

二、1~5 DBABA 6~10 CABBB

三、1~5 BDACB 6~10 BABCB

四、1~5 BECAD

五、1~5 CBDCA

- 六、1. large 2. size 3. special 4. number
5. blow

- 七、1. differences 2. lucky 3. wishes
4. blows 5. countries

- 八、1. Is there any meat in the tomato and egg soup?
2. I'd like beef noodles.
3. I'd like a large bowl.
4. The number of candles is the person's age.
5. It is getting popular to have cakes on birthdays.

- 九、1. On Monday evening.
2. Mr. Brown's small son.
3. 然后他回来了,看起来很担忧。
4. No, she isn't.
5. She is looking for her son outside.

十、One possible version:

My Favorite Food

I am a middle school student. I like to eat healthy food. I have milk, eggs and bread for breakfast. For lunch I would like rice, fish and vegetables. I like chicken, juice, rice and hamburgers for supper. Of all the food, my favorite food is chicken and apple juice.

I think we all need to eat healthy food to keep healthy. And it's good for getting good

grades.

Unit 11 How was your school trip?

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考:过去; yesterday; just now
运用:(1) went shopping (2) Did; go; didn't
(3) had
2. 运用:(1) How was (2) How was (3) B
3. 思考:疑问;否定;后面
运用:(1) A (2) anything (3) D
4. 思考:名词;动词; about
运用:(1) D (2) worried about

【基础强化】

- 一、1. milked 2. countryside 3. excellent
4. yesterday 5. worry
二、1~5 BBAAC 6~10 DCBBC
三、1. played 2. didn't go 3. lucky
4. farmers 5. anything
四、1. I rode a horse.
2. How was your school trip?
3. Did you pick any strawberries?
4. I took some photos there.
5. Where did they go last week?
五、1. showed; around 2. had; fun
3. in the countryside
4. milked; cow 5. quite a lot

【能力提升】

- 六、1~5 CDAAD 6~10 CDBBD
七、1~5 CDCDD

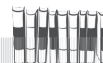
Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考:表语;定语;表语
运用:(1) A (2) exciting excited
(3) exciting
2. 思考:interested; interest; 名词;动词
运用:(1) playing (2) is interested in (3) C
3. 思考:可数名词;不可数名词; do; doing
运用:(1) ① too many ② too much
③ much too (2) C (3) playing
4. 思考:to do; from; about
运用:(1) about (2) to speak (3) from

【基础强化】

- 一、1. hear 2. expensive 3. cheap
4. interested 5. Luckily



二、1~5 ABCAB 6~10 DCDAC

三、1. All in all

2. took; photos

3. taught; how to make

4. learned; about

5. Luckily; came out

四、1. went 2. played 3. drew 4. studied

5. visited 6. lived 7. had 8. kinds

9. milked 10. interesting

五、1. She stayed at home and cleaned the house yesterday.

2. Did you take any photos in the zoo?

3. Paul rode a horse on Sunday afternoon.

【能力提升】

六、1~5 CBAAD 6~10 AACAB

11~15 DACAD

七、1~4 CDBD

单元评估

一、1~5 BBACC 6~10 BCABC

11. sunny 12. museums 13. old

14. walked 15. cool

二、1~5 BACBC 6~10 DBBCA

三、1~5 DBACD 6~10 BBCAB

四、1~5 CEBAD

五、1~5 DCACB

六、1. lovely 2. flowers 3. museum

4. Everything 5. worry

七、1. anything 2. fed 3. interested

4. I picked apples.

5. Did you take any photos?

八、1~5 CFADG

九、One possible version:

Sunday, May 3rd

Sunny

We had a great time on the school trip. We meet at the school gate in the morning. Then we started our trip at 8:00.

First we went to Qianfo Mountain. We climbed the mountain in the morning. We had a picnic on the mountain at noon. We thought the food was very delicious and we played games after lunch. In the afternoon, we visited Jinan Museum. We saw a lot of old things. Some of us were interested in them.

Finally, we took the bus back to school at 4:30. What a happy day!

Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

Section A

【重点突破】

1. 思考:特殊疑问;原形

运用:(1) What did; do (2) Where did; go

(3) Who taught

2. 思考:形容词;副词;形容词;复数可数名词;不可数名词

运用:(1) B (2) C (3) A

3. 思考:as; for; on; out; when; because

运用:(1) on (2) out (3) for (4) as

4. 思考:at home;形容词

运用:(1) C (2) healthy

【基础强化】

一、1. language 2. away 3. mice

4. badminton 5. natural

二、1~5 ACBCA 6~10 BDABB

三、1. playing 2. to learn 3. natural

4. visitors 5. camping

四、1. kind of; stayed up 2. shout at

3. ran away 4. second language

五、1~5 CBDEA

【能力提升】

六、1~5 BDCAC 6~10 DAABA

七、1~4 ADBB

八、1. Did you have a good weekend?

2. How was the weather yesterday?

3. Did he play badminton?

4. Who went boating last Sunday?

5. When did they go on a school trip?

Section B

【重点突破】

1. 思考: on; off; follow the rules;形容词

运用:(1) C (2) healthy (3) D

2. 思考:从句;动词短语;动词短语

运用:(1) D (2) to work (3) to cross

3. 思考:surprised; surprising

运用:(1) A (2) A (3) B

4. 思考:感官;sb./sth. doing sth.

运用:(1) singing (2) playing (3) crossing

【基础强化】

一、1. surprise 2. scared 3. woke 4. forest

5. moving



二、1~5 BBBA 6~10 ABAB

三、1. were 2. scared

3. surprise; surprised; surprising

4. put 5. moving

四、1. This was a very useful lesson for me.

2. I was very tired so I went to sleep early.

3. Tom studied for the English test last night.

4. I finished my English homework an hour ago.

5. I saw Linda playing table tennis on the playground.

五、1. got; surprise 2. put up 3. woke; up

4. looked out

六、My name is Jack. I had a busy weekend.

On Saturday morning, I cleaned my house. In the afternoon, I did my homework. On Saturday night, I helped mom cook dinner. On Sunday morning, I went to the library and read some books. Then in the afternoon, I played soccer with my friends. On Sunday night, I saw an interesting TV show.

【能力提升】

七、1~5 CADDB 6~10 CDBCA 11~15 BCABC

八、1~4 CCBC

单元评估

一、1~5 CBCBA 6~10 ACACB

11. museum 12. yesterday 13. foot

14. warm 15. students

二、1~5 ACDAD 6~10 BCADA

三、1~5 ABCBD 6~10 CACBC

四、1~5 FAGDC

五、1~5 BAAAB

六、1. kite 2. shout 3. Natural 4. scared

5. forest

七、1. sheep 2. ran 3. are flying

4. surprised 5. to keep

八、1. I went camping with my family.

2. I had a busy weekend.

3. She works as a nurse.

4. I studied for a test.

5. Did they play computer games on the weekend?

九、1~5 BFADG

十、One possible version:

I am Wang Lin. I had a great May Day Holiday. I went to Beijing with my parents. We spent three days visiting there. The weather

was warm but windy. We visited many places.

We went to the Palace Museum on the first day. Then we went to the Summer Palace. There were too many people and I saw a lot of old things. I think they are interesting. The next day, we went to the Great Wall. I was very excited. We visited Wangfujing Street on the third day. There were many delicious food. Beijing Duck is very famous, so we had it. It was great.

I had a great time in Beijing. I want to visit it again.

期末测试

一、1~5 CABBC 6~10 ABABC

11~15 BACAB

二、16~20 BDCCD 21~25 CDCDC

26~30 BAABC

三、31~35 CADBC 36~40 DADBC

41~45 BABBC

四、46~50 BACCD

五、51~55 ACDDA 56~60 CDBAD

61~65 CACBB

六、66. is working 67. teaches 68. to visit

69. told 70. Welcome

七、71. Why do you like pandas?

72. Do you like tigers?

73. Scott loves dogs because they are very cute.

74. What animals does he want to see?

75. Where are koalas from?

八、76. come true 77. get lost

78. made of 79. less than

80. wonderful; describe

九、81~85 FCEBD

十、One possible version:

Last Sunday, my classmates and I went for a trip. We went to the park by bike. I think it's a good exercise, and it's good for our health. I like bicycling very much. At 9 o'clock, we got to the park. We saw a lot of flowers and animals. The flowers there were very beautiful. There are many kinds of animals, too. We had a good time. At 5 o'clock in the afternoon, we rode back home. I'm so excited that I could spend the wonderful time with my classmates.



Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: What can you do, Tom?

M: I can play the piano.

2. W: Peter, where do you want to go today?

M: I want to visit grandma Li at the old people's home.

3. M: Mary, can you dance?

W: No, I can't. But I can draw very well.

4. W: What club do you want to join, Mike?

M: I like to sing and dance. I want to join the music club.

5. W: Are you good at tennis, Sam?

M: Yes, I am. It is my favorite.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

W: Hi, Frank. We have a school show on May Day. Do you want to join us?

M: Sure. But I can't sing or dance.

W: You are good at writing stories. You can write a story for it.

M: Really? Can I do that, Nancy?

W: Of course.

M: Great! I'll write a story.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

M: Hi, Mary! This is a photo of my pen pal, John.

W: Where is he from?

M: He is from America. And he lives in New York with his parents.

W: What does he like to do?

M: He likes to draw and write.

W: Can he speak Chinese?

M: Yes, but only a little.

W: What club is he in?

M: A swimming club.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Julia is a girl from the UK. She is 15 years old. She likes making friends with different people. She is good at playing the piano. She likes singing and dancing, too. She often sings songs and plays the piano with her friends on weekends. Now, Julia is in the music club in her school. She has music lessons on Friday evenings. And she wants to be a musician in the future.

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: What do you like for lunch?

M: I like hamburgers.

2. W: What do you usually do after school?

M: Play soccer with my friends.

3. W: What do you like for breakfast?

M: Cake. It tastes really nice.

4. W: When does your father go to work?

M: At 7:30.

5. W: What do you want to be, Tony?

M: I want to be a doctor.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6 至 8 题。

W: Hi, Daniel. Would you like to go out with me?

M: Yes, I'd love to. Let's go to a market.

W: What about Dongmen Market?

M: OK, but what can we do there?

W: There is a show there tomorrow. I think we can see it.

M: That sounds interesting. Then when shall we meet?



W: What about 9 o'clock?

M: OK, see you tomorrow.

听第二段对话,回答第 9、10 题。

M: Hi, Maria! Who makes dinner for you every day?

W: Usually my mother. She cooks delicious and healthy dinner.

M: What a happy time to eat dinner! And what do you usually do after dinner?

W: After dinner, I usually play the piano. At about 9:00, I go to bed.

M: Thanks.

W: You are welcome.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Paul gets up early at 6:00 every morning. At 6:30, he has some bread and milk for breakfast and then he goes to school by bus at 6:50. Paul has seven classes from 8:00 a. m. to 3:00 p. m.

He often plays basketball at 3:30 in the afternoon. Then at 4:30 p. m., he goes home. Paul eats dinner with his family at 6:30. At 9:30, he goes to sleep.

This is Paul's day.

Unit 3 How do you get to school?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: How do you get to school, Jack?

M: I ride my bike.

2. M: When do you get home, Linda?

W: At about four o'clock.

3. W: Dale, how far is it from your home to the zoo?

M: About 2 kilometers.

4. M: How long does it take you to go to the bus stop, Helen?

W: It's not far. Maybe 10 minutes.

5. W: Where does your brother live, Paul?

M: He lives near the train station.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

W: Dave, how do you get home from school?

M: I take the school bus.

W: How far is it from your home to school?

M: 5 kilometers.

M: Oh, it's a little far.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: Hi, Bob. What do you want to do this Sunday?

M: It's my grandpa's 70th birthday. I want to see him.

W: Where does he live?

M: He lives in a village.

W: Is it far?

M: Yes, I need to take a train.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

My name is Helen. I am a middle school student. I am twelve years old. I go to school from Monday to Friday. My grandparents live on a farm. On weekends, I go to the farm with our parents. The farm is far from our home. We usually go to the farm by car. It takes us three hours to get there. I often fly a kite with my cousin on the farm.

Unit 4 Don't eat in class.

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. M: Can we wear a hat in class?

W: No, we can't.

2. M: What is the rule in a library?

W: We have to be quiet.

3. W: Is this your new uniform, John? It is beautiful.

M: Yes, I like it too.

4. M: Mom, can I watch the basketball game now?

W: No, you must finish your homework first.

5. W: Where can I listen to music, Mr. Green?

M: You can listen to it in the music room.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

M: Hi, Ann. Let's watch the tennis game this evening.

W: I'd love to, but I can't go out on school nights.

M: Oh, that's too bad.

W: There are many rules at my home. What about you?



M: Me, too. I have to clean my room on weekends.

W: Well, we have to follow the rules.

M: Yeah. They make rules to help us.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

M: What's the date today, Laura?

W: It's April 25th.

M: Oh, tomorrow is my father's birthday.

W: Really? What do you want to do for your father, Jim?

M: I want to buy a book for him. He likes reading.

W: That's a good idea.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Hello, boys and girls. Welcome to the school library. You have to follow some rules.

First, you can't be noisy in the library. You have to be quiet here. Second, don't listen to music, so you can't bring your music player to the library. Third, you can't bring any food or eat anything in it. Fourth, don't take photos in the library.

That's all. Have a good time here.

Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: Do you like koalas, Mike?

M: No, I don't. I like pandas.

2. W: Why do you like dogs, John?

M: Because they are smart.

3. M: Where are lions from, Mary?

W: They are from South Africa.

4. W: What do you think of elephants, Tony?

M: They are smart. They can draw well.

5. M: Mom, can you take me to the zoo today?

W: OK. Let's go.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

W: There are many animals in the zoo. What animals do you like, John?

M: I like giraffes because they're friendly.

W: Where do they come from?

M: Africa. What animals do you like, Lucy?

W: I like pandas.

M: Really? Why?

W: Because they're very cute.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

M: Excuse me. Do you like animals, Kate?

W: Yes, I do.

M: What animals do you like?

W: I like koalas. I think they are interesting.

M: Let's go to the zoo on Sunday.

W: OK. Where is the zoo?

M: It's near the library on Center Street.

W: OK, see you then.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Hello, I'm Lucy. There is a zoo near my home. I often go there to see animals with my family on weekends. There are many kinds of animals in it. They're tigers, koalas, elephants, monkeys and so on. I think tigers are very dangerous and I don't like them. I like monkeys best, because they are clever and cute. My brother likes elephants because they are smart and they can do something for people. My sister likes koalas because she thinks they are interesting. Do you like animals?

Unit 6 I'm watching TV

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: What's your favorite food?

M: I like ice-cream best.

2. M: Lucy, what is Tom doing?

W: Oh, he is playing basketball.

3. W: What time is it in Jinan?

M: It's nine o'clock.

4. M: Mary, are you reading or listening to a CD?

W: I'm listening to a CD.

5. W: Joe, where is Lily?

M: She is buying milk and bread at the supermarket.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

W: Jim, what do you want to eat for lunch?

M: I want to eat tomatoes.



W: Oh, we don't have any tomatoes at home. Can you buy some?

M: Sorry, Mom. I'm doing my homework. Please ask Linda to buy.

W: She's not at home. She's helping your father pick apples.

M: OK, Mom.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: Hi, Mike. Sunday is my father's birthday. My family are going to have a party. I hope you can come.

M: I'm coming. Where is it? In your home?

W: No. We are going to have it at the restaurant on Jingshi Road. It's next to my home.

M: OK, I see. When is it going to start?

W: At six o'clock. But can you come a little earlier?

M: No problem!

W: See you then.

M: See you.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Tara's birthday is coming. She will be sixteen years old. Her mother, Mrs. Green, plans to have a birthday party for her. Mrs. Green will buy apples, watermelons, pears, strawberries and oranges in a supermarket near her house. Tara will invite many of her friends to the party. Fifteen of them are girls. Mr. and Mrs. Green will make many kinds of dumplings for them. Tara says she will clean the house after the party.

Now it's half past five in the afternoon. Everything is ready. The party will begin in half an hour.

期中测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: Can you play the piano?

M: Yes, I can and I can play it well.

2. W: What time do you usually have the first class?

M: At about 8:00.

3. W: How do you go to Paris every year?

M: I usually take the plane.

4. W: Why do you like pandas?

M: Because they are really cute.

5. W: What does your mother usually do on week-ends?

M: She always clean the room.

(二)在录音中,你将听到一段对话及五个问题。请根据对话内容及问题选择正确答案。(对话及问题读两遍)

M1: Hello, John. Do you want to join an interesting music club?

M2: Of course I do. But I can't. I love the piano best. But I can't play it.

M1: Oh. I can play the piano. I can teach you.

M2: Ha, it's so kind of you, Tom. Thank you. Do you have time this weekend? I can go to your house.

M1: OK. It's about 20 kilometers from my home to our school. You can ride a bike or take the No. 5 bus.

M2: What time should I go?

M1: Any time. If you like, what about 8:30 in the morning? It's a good time to learn things.

M2: Great! I have a new bike. I can ride it to your home.

M1: OK, see you then!

M2: See you!

Questions:

6. What club does John want to join?

7. Can John play the piano?

8. How far is it from Tom's home to the school?

9. What time will John come to Tom's home?

10. How does Tom go to see John?

(三)在录音中,你将听到一篇短文及五个问题。请根据短文内容及问题选择正确答案。(短文及问题读两遍)

Thank you for your letter. Let me tell you about my school day. In the morning, I get up at six ten. After that, I brush my teeth. At about seven o'clock, I eat breakfast. I have some milk and hamburgers for breakfast. My school is not far from my home. So I always walk to school. At eight o'clock, I have the first class. In the morning I have three classes. The third class usually finishes at 11:40. Then it's time to have lunch. I have some healthy food. In the afternoon, we have two classes. At 4:00 I go home. At home, I do my homework first. Then I have dinner with my family. Then I watch TV.

This is my day. What about yours?



Questions:

11. What time does the writer get up?
12. What does he have for breakfast?
13. How does he go to school?
14. How many classes does he have in the afternoon?
15. What does he usually do after dinner?

Unit 7 It's raining!

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. M: Let's play tennis.
W: Sounds great!
2. M: Where is my schoolbag, Cindy?
W: Look, Eric! It's on your bed.
3. M: Alice, do you have a CD player?
W: No, I don't. But my sister Kate has one.
4. M: Good morning! Can I help you?
W: Yes, please. I want to buy a hat for my daughter.
5. M: What's the weather like today?
W: It's raining.

(二)请听录音中两段长对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6 至 8 题。

- W: What do you usually do on Saturday, Bill?
M: On Saturday morning I do my homework. After lunch, I often play soccer with my friends. What about you, Linda?

W: I usually go to the movies with my sister on Saturday afternoon.

听第二段对话,回答第 9、10 题。

- W: Eric, what are you doing?
M: I'm having a party.
W: Oh, that sounds like fun. How's the weather in Mexico?
M: Terrible. It's raining.
W: Oh, what a bad weather!

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

It is cloudy. Jack flies his kite on the playground. He is very happy. But it is raining now. He can't fly his kite. His shirt and trousers are wet. He doesn't want to go home. Ten minutes

later, the sun is shining. It is warm now and Jack has a good idea. He flies his kite and wet clothes. So his wet clothes are dry. There is a smile on his face. What a clever boy.

Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: Excuse me. How can I get to the Green Hotel?
M: It's far from here. You can get there by bus.
2. W: Excuse me. Is there a library near here?
M: Let me see. There is one over there, next to the bank.
3. M: Excuse me. How can I get to the bank?
W: Go down this street. It's next to the hospital.
4. W: Is there a new hotel near the park?
M: No, the hotel near the park is old.
5. W: Where do you usually go on weekends, Tony?
M: I usually go to the Green Supermarket. It's very big and I like shopping there.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

- W: Excuse me. Is there a restaurant near here?
M: Yes, there is. There is one on Center Street.
W: How can I get there?

M: Just go along North Road and turn right at the park.

W: Thank you very much.

M: You're welcome.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

- W: Hey, John.
M: Hi, Mary.
W: What are you doing?
M: I'm reading a book.

W: Do you want to come over to my house? We can watch a video.

M: OK. Where is your house?

W: It's on New Street. It's very quiet.

M: Oh, OK. I'll see you at two thirty.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当



单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Hello! I'm Susan. I'm a middle school student. My school is on Bridge Street. Across from the school is a bookstore. Next to the bookstore is a small hotel. Behind the school is a park. Lots of people come to the park to exercise every day. I like reading books in it. Just go down Bridge Street and turn right. You can see a clothes store.

I often buy clothes there with my mother. A restaurant is next to it. We can enjoy nice food there after shopping.

Unit 9 What does he look like?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. M: What time do you usually go to bed?

W: I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

2. M: Can Jenny play the piano?

W: Yes, she can play it very well.

3. M: What does your teacher look like?

W: She has long curly hair and wears glasses.

4. M: Where is my cat?

W: It's under the chair.

5. M: How do you go to work?

W: I usually go to work on foot.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

M1: Hi, Tony. Are you going to the movie tonight?

M2: Yes. But I may be a little late. My friend David is going, too. Just meet him in front of the cinema first.

M1: Oh, but I don't know him. What does he look like?

M2: Well, he is of medium height. He has brown hair and wears glasses.

M1: OK. See you later then.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: You're going to Moscow for your vacation.

What are you going to do there?

M: We are going to visit the museums.

W: How are you getting there?

M: We plan to get there by plane.

W: And how long are you going to stay there?

M: We're going to stay there for a week.

W: How wonderful! Hope you have a great journey!

M: Thanks a lot. See you.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

I have a happy family. My father is of medium build. He likes reading and playing chess. My mother is tall with a round face. She likes watching TV and telling jokes. I'm not tall, but my short curly hair makes me look great. I have a younger sister. She is good-looking. She likes talking and never stops talking.

Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. M: Look! It's snowing hard.

W: Yeah, beautiful! It's the first snow in Beijing.

2. W: What fruit do you like best?

M: I like apples best.

3. M: Look! Tom is swimming so fast.

W: Of course. He is on the school swim team.

4. M: Monica, what size do you want?

W: Medium, please.

5. W: Jack, what kind of noodles would you like?

M: Beef and tomato noodles.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)

听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

M: It's time for lunch. Let's order some dumplings.

W: OK. What kind of dumplings would you like?

M: I'd like a small bowl of mutton dumplings.

What about you?

W: I'd like a large bowl with beef.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: Mike, what are you doing now?

M: I'm watching a show on TV, but the show is very boring.

W: Well, let's go to the zoo to see koalas.

M: That sounds great. Koalas are my favorite animals.



W: Let's go there by bike.

M: OK. When will we meet?

W: How about a quarter past two?

M: OK. See you then.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

The Noodle House has really good noodles. They are cheap, and they are great!

The Noodle House has some specials. Special 1 has beef and tomato and is only ¥5. Special 2 has mutton and cabbage. It is ¥6. And Special 3 has chicken and carrot. It's only ¥8. I like it best. You can get some other great food at the Noodle House. Try the Noodle House soon!

Unit 11 How was your school trip?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. W: Hi, Scott! Did you go to the United Kingdom last Wednesday?

M: Yes, I did. I went there with my parents.

2. M: Did you go to the countryside yesterday morning, Jenny?

W: No, I went there yesterday afternoon.

3. W: Where did you go last Saturday, Frank?

M: I went to a farm with my grandfather.

4. W: Hi, John! What did you do yesterday morning?

M: I picked strawberries.

5. W: Why didn't you go out to take a walk yesterday?

M: Because it was rainy.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)
听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

M: Hi, Betty! Did you go on the school trip?

W: No, I stayed at home.

M: Why?

W: Because I had lots of things to do.

M: What did you do?

W: I cleaned my room and did my homework.

Then I went to a movie with my sister on Sunday afternoon.

听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: Hi, Nick! Did you have a great school trip?

M: Yes, I did. I went to the zoo with my friends.

W: Did you ride your bikes or take the bus there?

M: We took the bus there.

W: Were there any animals there?

M: Yes, they were very interesting and cute.

W: Did you take any photos?

M: Yes, but only some. There were too many people there. It was difficult to take photos.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Last week, I had a quite good vacation to Hainan with my family. We had great fun playing in different places. On Monday, the weather was sunny and hot. We went to White beach and swam in the water.

On Tuesday, it was rainy. We visited two museums. We saw a lot of old things.

On Wednesday and Thursday, it was cloudy. We walked in the city. On Friday, the weather was cool. We climbed mountains. We were tired but happy. I really enjoyed my vacation.

Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. M: Were you at home last night, Tina?

W: No, I was at my friend's home.

2. W: Hi, Jim. Let's go to the zoo.

M: That sounds good. But I went there last Monday.

3. W: Hi, Peter. How was your weekend?

M: Pretty good. Thanks.

4. W: How do you like the beaches?

M: They are very beautiful.

5. M: What did you do last Sunday?

W: I cleaned my room.

(二)请听录音中两段较长的对话。每段对话后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出能回答所给问题的最佳答案。(每段对话读两遍)
听第一段对话,回答第 6、7 题。

W: Today is fine. Let's play tennis, Mike.

M: Sorry. I played it with Carol this morning.

W: Let's go to the zoo.

M: That sounds great. Let's go.



听第二段对话,回答第 8 至 10 题。

M: Kate, where did you go yesterday?

W: I went camping in the countryside.

M: What was the weather like there?

W: It was sunny.

M: What did you do?

W: In the morning, I went fishing by the lake.

And we climbed the mountains in the afternoon.

(三)听力填词:请听下面一段独白。根据所听到的内容,写出可以填入下表 11 至 15 空格中的适当单词,每空限填一词。(独白读两遍)

Last week, the teacher told us that there were many old things in the museum. So we decided to go and see them. Yesterday we went there on foot because it was not far from our school. The weather was warm. The sun was shining. We walked down Zhongshan Road and turn at the second crossing. We found it on the left.

Many people were there, but most of them were students. When the guide explained, we listened carefully. There we learned a lot.

期末测试

(一)请听录音中的五组短对话。每组对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中,选出与对话内容相符的选项。(每组对话读两遍)

1. M: Hi, Lisa. Let's go to the zoo and see the pandas. They are so cute.

W: That's great! Let's go.

2. W: Hey, Tom. I'm playing computer games with our friends. Do you want to come?

M: Sounds great. But I need to study. Maybe next time.

3. W: Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?

M: Sure. It's on Long Street and you can see it from here.

4. W: Hi, Tom. We can't go to play soccer because it's raining.

M: What a pity! We have to stay at home.

5. M: How often do you go to the movies, Lucy?

W: I am not sure. Maybe once a month.

(二)在录音中,你将听到一段对话及五个问题。请根据对话内容及问题选择正确答案。(对话及问题

读两遍)

M: Hi, Vera. How was your vacation?

W: It's great.

M: Where did you go?

W: I went to Tokyo with my family.

M: Really? What did you do there?

W: We visited a lot of museums.

M: Oh, how were they?

W: They were interesting. But they were also very crowded.

M: Did you go shopping?

W: Yeah. I did.

M: How were the stores?

W: Oh, they were very expensive. So I didn't buy anything.

M: And how were the people there? Did you meet anyone interesting?

W: Yeah, the people were really friendly, and I met a Japanese musician. She is really good at singing. Everyone loves her.

M: Sounds like you had a lot of fun there.

Questions:

6. How was Vera's vacation?

7. Where did Vera go on vacation?

8. What did Vera do there?

9. Why didn't she buy anything?

10. Who did she meet there?

(三)在录音中,你将听到一篇短文及五个问题。请根据短文内容及问题选择正确答案。(短文及问题读两遍)

Let me tell you something about Mary. Mary is one of my best friends. Mary is from Australia and she is now thirteen years old. Mary lives in Beijing now and she thinks Beijing is a beautiful city. She often listens to his music. Mary loves sports and she likes swimming a lot, because she thinks it's healthy. And she usually goes shopping with her friends on weekends.

Questions:

11. Where is Mary from?

12. How old is Mary?

13. What does Mary think of Beijing?

14. What does Mary usually do on weekends?

15. Why does Mary like swimming?